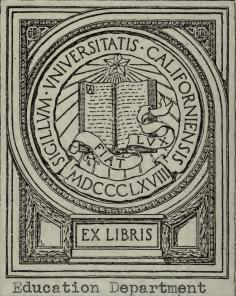


IN MEMORIAM A. F. Lange



17.6



6 also 11 other Wid 6 below 1 helow 26 above 8 Abelow SIA Min Mamie G. Ticknow. Jan. 1894 High School. Helena. Mant.

vita, spritu life = diar = charms, delectus last - froxime. book time : brens A Home

Digitized by the Internet Archive in 2008 with funding from Microsoft Corporation

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN:

ADAPTED TO THE

LATIN GRAMMARS

OF

ALLEN AND GREENOUGH, ANDREWS AND STODDARD, BARTHOLOMEW,
BULLIONS AND MORRIS, CHASE AND STUART,
GILDERSLEEVE, AND HARKNESS,

AND PREPARED AS AN

INTRODUCTION TO CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES
ON THE GALLIC WAR.

BY

ELISHA JONES, M. A.,

AUTHOR OF "EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION" AND "EXERCISES IN GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION."

CHICAGO:
S. C. GRIGGS AND COMPANY.
1892

COPYRIGHT, 1877,
By S. C. GRIGGS AND COMPANY.

Prof. a. 7. Lange to Education Nept

PREFACE.

These Lessons are intended as a practical drill-book for the beginner in Latin. They aim to make him familiar with the ordinary Latin inflections and the simpler principles of Latin syntax; to teach him as many words and expressions from Cæsar's Commentaries as he can learn with profit, and thus prepare him for the successful study of that work.

References are made to seven of our best Latin grammars, with any one of which the book may be used. In the part devoted to inflection, the learner's attention is directed, as far as thought practicable, to the elements of words declined and conjugated,—to stems, endings, signs, and connecting vowels. The root and formation of stems are not referred to; these subjects belong more properly to a later stage of the study. In syntax, the principal rules only are introduced, and these are illustrated by numerous examples. Of the latter, translations are given which the learner may imitate in rendering the parallel exercises that follow; these exercises are taken chiefly from the Commentaries and accompanied by explanatory notes. English exercises to be turned into Latin are also added; these are so formed that the Latin sentences immediately preceding furnish models for their construction:

A few pages of fables and selections from early Roman history, together with the necessary annotations, follow the lessons. Complete vocabularies are added; in the Latin-English part, such derivations of Latin words as can be most readily understood are given, and also some English derivatives. Of these others will suggest themselves. With neither, however, should the mind of the beginner be much burdened. Their main use at this time is to aid him in fixing the meanings of words. The chief work of the first year in Latin is to master the inflections and build up a vocabulary.

The order of the grammars has not been followed. The verb is introduced early and made to alternate with the declensions, so as to give greater variety to the character of the sentences. No effort has been made to adapt the length of the lessons to the capacity of all classes; such an attempt would be futile. It will often be found necessary to devote two or more recitations to a single lesson. Some teachers may think it expedient to omit a few sentences from many of the exercises. To insure a good preparation for Cæsar, however, nothing should be omitted. It is believed that for classes in general the book contains matter sufficient for a year's labor.

The use of blackboards sufficiently extensive for an entire class cannot be too urgently recommended. The practice of requiring inflections and translations to be written every day upon the blackboard, and subjected to the criticism of the class, is most excellent. It not only adds great interest to the recitation, but also secures an accuracy and readiness which cannot be as easily attained, perhaps, by any other means.

The plan of the book was formed for the most part during a seven years' experience with beginners. It does not seem to me

necessary to give a list of the introductory books, grammars, editions of Cæsar, and lexicons — American, English, and German — which have been consulted in its preparation. Some things which appear to be common property have been adopted without credit. I may here express my sincere thanks to kind friends for encouragement and practical suggestions; to the University Press of Cambridge for great patience and pains in securing typographical excellence; and especially to my publishers, Messrs. S. C. Griggs & Co. of Chicago, for sparing no expense to produce a school-book unsurpassed in mechanical execution.

These Lessons are offered to the public with much hesitation, but with the hope that they may prove serviceable to some teachers and beginners.

ELISHA JONES.

University of Michigan, August, 1877.



CONTENTS.

	PAGE
ABBREVIATIONS	xii
INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES AND DEFINITIONS	1
LESSON I Nouns: First Declension	3
LESSON II. — Nouns: First Declension. — Prepositions . Declension of dea and filla.	4
LESSON III. — Nouns: Second Declension Nouns in ĭs; Gender.	6
LESSON IV. — Nouns: Second Declension. — Prepositions Nouns in r and um. — Prepositions used with the Ablative.	7
LESSON V. — Nouns: Second Declension. — Prepositions Genitive Singular of Nouns in its or itm; Vocative of filits and proper names in its.; Declension of dets. — Use of in and stb.	9
LESSON VI. — ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS . Declension and Agreement of Adjectives.	11
LESSON VII.—ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (continued)	12
LESSON VIII. — ADDITIONAL EXERCISES. — APPOSITION.	14
LESSON IX. — Verbs: Preliminary Definitions	15
LESSON X. — Verbs: First Conjugation	16
LESSON XI. — THE SIMPLE SENTENCE	18
Subject Nominative. —Agreement of Verb. — Direct Object.	
LESSON XII. — VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION (continued) Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of amo.	19
LESSON XIII. — Modifiers of the Subject and Predicate; Dative of Indirect Object; Genitive with Nouns	21
LESSON XIV. — Verbs: First Conjugation; Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses; the Perfect Stem	23
LESSON XV. — Verbs: First Conjugation: Imperative Mood; Use of the Imperative	25
LESSON XVI. — Verbs: Infinitives, Participles, Gerund, and Supine	26

CONTENTS.

Infinitive as Object; Subject of the Infinitive.	27
LESSON XVIII. — GENERAL EXERCISE. ABLATIVE OF MEANS.	29
LESSON XIX. — THIRD DECLENSION: NOUNS	31
LESSON XX. — THIRD DECLENSION (continued)	32
LESSON XXI. — THIRD DECLENSION (continued)	38
LESSON XXII. — THIRD DECLENSION (continued)	35
LESSON XXIII. — THIRD DECLENSION (continued)	36
LESSON XXIV. — Conjugation of the Verb Sum	38
LESSON XXV. — PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE	38
LESSON XXVI. — THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	40
LESSON XXVII.—Compounds of Sum.—Dative with Compounds	41
LESSON XXVIII. — CONJUGATION OF POSSUM. — USE OF THE INFINITIVE	43
LESSON XXIX. — Subjunctive Mood of Amo	44
LESSON XXX. — REVIEW OF AMO. — TWO ACCUSATIVES	46
LESSON XXXI. — Passive Voice of Amo	48
Definitions and Personal Endings of the Passive Voice.	
LESSON XXXII. — Passive Voice of Amo (continued)	49
LESSON XXXIII. — PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (continued)	51
LESSON XXXIV. — Subjunctive Passive of Amo	52
LESSON XXXV DEPONENT VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION .	53
LESSON XXXVI. — ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. — COMPLEX AND COMPOUND SENTENCES	58
LESSON XXXVII. — ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION	56
LESSON XXXVIII ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION (con-	
tinued)	58
LESSON XXXIX. — COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES Declension of Comparatives.	59
LESSON XL. — Comparison of Adjectives (continued)	61
LESSON XLI. — DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES	62
LESSON XLII. — ADVERBS	64
LESSON XLIII. — VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE	66
LESSON XLIV. — ADDITIONAL EXERCISES	67
Accusative of Time.	

CONTENTS.

LESSON	XLV. — VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE	69
LESSON	XLVI. — DEPONENT VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION .	70
	XLVII. — FOURTH DECLENSION	72
LESSON	XLVIII. — FIFTH DECLENSION	73
LESSON	XLIX. — VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE	74
LESSON	L. — VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE .	76
	LI. + Verbs: Fourth Conjugation: Active and voices	78
LESSON	LII. — THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN IO	79
GATION		80
	tive with certain Deponents.	
Place	LIV. — GENERAL EXERCISE: PLACE to which; Place at or in which; Place from which.	82
LESSON	LV. — NUMERALS. — EXTENT IN SPACE	84
LESSON	LVI. — Compound Nouns. — Ablative of Time .	86
LESSON FLEXIV	LVII. — Pronouns: Personal, Possessive, and Re-	87
LESSON	LVIII. — PRONOUNS (continued): DEMONSTRATIVE .	89
	LIX. — Pronouns (continued): Relative	90
DEFINIT		92
	ension of ăliquis.	
	LXI. — Conjunctions	93
	LXII. — CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES	95
	LXIII. — PARTICIPLES	96
LESSON	LXIV. — ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	98
LESSON	LXV. — IRREGULAR VERBS: FERO	100
LESSON FICATIO	LXVI. — Compounds of Fero. — Ablative of Speci-	101
LESSON Compou	LXVII. — IRREGULAR VERBS (continued): Volo and its	103
LESSON	LXVIII IRREGULAR VRRBS (continued): Eo and Fig. :	105
	LXIX. — Defective and Impersonal Verbs \cdot . : itive as Subject.	106
LESSON of AGE	LXX. — THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — DATIVE	108

LESSON LXXI. — Use of the Dative		110
LESSON LXXII. — Use of the Ablative and Subjunctive Ablative with Comparatives. — Subjunctive expressing a Wish Command.		112
LESSON LXXIII. — SEQUENCE OF TENSES. — SUBJUNCTIVE FINAL CLAUSES		114
LESSON LXXIV. — Use of the Dative (continued) Dative of the Person possessing; Two Datives.		116
LESSON LXXV. — Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses .		118
LESSON LXXVI. — Use of the Genitive Genitive with Adjectives; Genitive in Predicate; Genitive with cotain Verbs.	er-	120
LESSON LXXVII. — CONDITIONAL SENTENCES		122
LESSON LXXVIII. — Use of the Ablative Ablative expressing Measure of Difference; Ablative of Quality.		124
LESSON LXXIX. — Concessive Clauses		126
LESSON LXXX. — Use of the Ablative (continued) Ablative of Price; Ablative of Distance; Ablative with Adjectives.		128
LESSON LXXXI. — CAUSAL CLAUSES		130
LESSON LXXXII. — TEMPORAL CLAUSES		132
LESSON LXXXIII. — SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS		134
LESSON LXXXIV ORATIO OBLIQUA INDIRECT DISCOURSE		136
LESSON LXXXV. — INDIRECT DISCOURSE (continued)		138
LESSON LXXXVI. — INDIRECT DISCOURSE (continued)		139
LESSON LXXXVII. — THE GERUND		140
LESSON LXXXVIII. — THE GERUNDIVE		142
LESSON LXXXIX. — THE SUPINE		144
LESSON XC. — THE ROMAN CALENDAR. — ABBREVIATIONS .		146
LESSON XCI. — GENERAL EXERCISE		148
LESSON XCII. — GENERAL EXERCISE		150
SELECTIONS FOR READING.		
I. FABLES		158
II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY		156
GENERAL VOCABULARY.		
I. Latin-English		167
II. ENGLISH-LATIN		211

TABLE showing the Changes made in Moods and Tenses when Direct Discourse becomes Indirect.

I. Moods.

1. Moods.			
1. Principal Clauses: State	ements.		
DIRECT DISCOURSE.	INDIRECT DISCOURSE.		
Indicative becomes Infi	nitive.		
Active Subjunctive in the apod-	ure Active Participle with		
	sse or fuisse.		
Passive Subjunctive in the apod-	, or futurum esse or fuisse,		
osis of a conditional sentence	ith ut and the subjunctive.		
· ·	•		
2. Principal Clauses: Que			
Indicative, 1st or 3d person, . becomes	Infinitive.		
Indicative, 2d person, becomes	Subjunctive.		
Subjunctive remains	Subjunctive.		
9 Principal Clauses Commanda	- Deskikistan		
3. Principal Clauses: Commands o Imperative becomes			
	Subjunctive.		
Subjunctive remains	Subjunctive.		
4. Subordinate Clauses of Al	l Kinds.		
Indicative becomes	Subjunctive.		
Subjunctive remains	Subjunctive.		
	2003 0000000		
II. Tenses.			
1. When an Indicative or a Subjunctive of Direct Discourse passes into a Subjunctive of Indirect Discourse.			
· ·	fect, when made dependent		
D : 1	Tense; Imperfect, some-		
become			
Future times Present, what an Historical Ten	en made dependent upon		
,			
	fect, when made dependent		
	Tense; Pluperfect, some-		
	an Historical Tense.		
Pluperfect remains P.	superject.		
2. When an Indicative of Direct Discourse	passes into an Infinitive of		
Indirect Discourse.			
Present remains I	Present.		
	uture Participle with esse.		
Perfect 1			
	Perfect.		
Pluperfect			
T. O. P.			

ABBREVIATIONS.

A. & G., Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar, revised edition.

A. & S., Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, revised edition.

abl., ablative.

acc., accusative.

act., active.

adj., adjective.

B., Bartholomew's Latin Grammar. B. & M., Bullions and Morris's Latin

Grammar.

C., Chase's Latin Grammar.

cf., confer, compare.

comp., comparative.

conj., conjunction.

dat., dative.

dem., demonstrative.

dep., deponent.

Ex., Example.

f., feminine.

fr., from.

G., Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar.

gen., genitive.

H., Harkness's Latin Grammar, revised edition of 1881.

ind., indicative.

indecl., indeclinable. indef., indefinite.

interrog., interrogative. lit., literal, literally.

LN., Lesson.

m., masculine.

n., neuter.

num., numeral.

part., participle.

pass., passive.

perf., perfect.

pers., person.

pl., plural.

poss., possessive.

prep., preposition.

pres., present.

pron., pronoun.

Ref., Reference.

rel., relative.

sc., scilicet, understand.

sing., singular.

subst., substantive.

voc., vocative.

Vy., Vocabulary.

w., with.

N. B. - The different sections of this book are marked by italicized numerals. The numerals in the notes printed thus (4) refer to such sections.

References to the revised edition of Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar are now given in the body of the book.

The references to the Grammars of Harkness, Gildersleeve, Allen and Greenough, and Andrews and Stoddard, have been adapted to the latest editions, and references to Chase and Stuart's Latin Grammar have been added.

APRIL 20, 1889.

INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES AND DEFINITIONS.

The following numerals and letters refer to such portions of the grammar as are to be committed to memory. When two are joined by a dash the intermediate sections or paragraphs are also included: e. g. 2-4 or a-c signifies that the parts designated by 2, 3, and 4, or by a, b, and c are to be committed to memory. Only the coarse print is to be learned unless a special reference is made to the fine.

- 1. Alphabet. A. & G. 1, a; 2; 3: A. & S. 3-7; 9-12: B. 3-10, w. fine print under 6 and 7: B. & M. 3; 5; 6; 7: G. 1; 2; 6: H. 2-4, w. fine print under 3 and 4: C. 1, 2.
- 2. Pronunciation and Syllables. (a) Roman Method. A. & G. 14, a-d; 16: A. & S. 15-22: B. 11-15; 16-21: G. 3; 4; 7; 8; 9: H. 5-8: C. 3, I.; 4; 5.
- (b) English Method. A. & G. 17, a-c, and Note: B. 377, the whole: B. & M. 11; 12; 13, 1-6: H. 9-14, w. fine print: C. 3, II.; 5.
- (c) Continental Method. B. & M. 14, 1-5; 13, 1-6: H. 15: C. 3, III.; 5.
- 3. Quantity. A. & G. 18, a-f; 5, fine print: A. & S. 26-29; 37 Note 1: 38-44: B. 12, a-c: B. & M. 8; 16-19: G. 2, 2; 10-13, Remark 1: H. 16, I.-III., and Notes 2-4: C. 7; 8.
- 4. Accent. A. & G. 19, a-c, w. Def.: A. & S. 25 NOTE 1; 30-35: B. 22-25: B. & M. 20, w. fine print: G. 14: H. 17; 18: C. 9; 11.
- 5. Parts of Speech and Inflection. A. & G. 20; 21; 25, a-i; 26; 27: A. & S. 54; 55; 73; 74: B. 26-33; 34-40; 115: B. & M. 24; 25, 1, 2; 26, 1, 2, Obs. 1-2; 27-30: G. 15-17, the whole: H. 37-40: C. 12.
- 6. Gender. A. & G. 28, a, b; 29; 30: A. & S. 78-83: B. 116-118, I.-III.: B. & M. 32-35: G. 18; 19, I.-III.; 20, 1-3: H. 41; 42, I., II.: C. 13.

7. Person, Number, and Case. A. & G. 31, a-g, Note, h: A. & S. 85-88, a: B. 119-120, w. fine print: B. & M. 31, 42, 4. Case; 43, w. fine print: G. 21-24: H. 44; 45, w. fine print: C. 14.

8. Declension. A. & G. 32, a, b; 33, a-g: A. & S. 89; 90, b; B. 121; 122, Rem. 1-5; 123: B. & M. 44-46, w. fine print; 47; 50, Dec. I.: G. 25-26, the whole: H. 46, w. fine print; 47, with Note 3: C. 15; 17.

Note.

The division of the above introductory matter into suitable lessons is left to the teacher. He may find it necessary at first to go over each lesson in advance with the class and point out the portions designated. The following suggestion is offered. Each definition should be made practical by application. E. g., as soon as the learner has committed to memory the portions of grammar referred to under "1. Alphabet," he should turn to "Lesson I." and classify the letters of the Latin words there found. After learning "2," he should pronounce the same letters in accordance with the rules under "2," and divide the words which they form into syllables. Learn thoroughly; review often; use the blackboard.

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN.

LESSON I.

NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION.

- 9. Learn the declension of the model noun, the stem and case-endings, the meaning of each case, and the rule of gender for nouns of the First Declension. A. & G. NOTE, 35; 36, c: A. & S. 91-93: B. 121; 123; 124: B. & M. 46; 48, First; 51; 53: G. 24; 27, REMARK 2; 28: H. 46, 1; 48, 1, 2, 4: C. 19; 18, I.
- 10. The learner should make the words of the Vocabularies so familiar that when the Latin is pronounced, he can give promptly the English equivalent, or when the English is pronounced, he can give promptly the Latin equivalent. Not only the Nominative, but also the Genitive and Gender of each Latin noun should always be learned.

VOCABULARY.

causă, ae, ¹ f.² cause, reason. Gěnāvă, ae, f. Geneva.³

glōriă, ae, f. glory.

linguă, ae, f. tongue, language.

měmoria, ae, f. memory.

rīpă, ae, f. bank (of a stream). viă, ae, f. way, road.

¹ ae is the case-ending of the Genitive. To form the Genitive of causă, substitute ae for final ă: e. g. Nom. causă, Gen. causae.

² In the Vocabularies, f. stands for feminine gender, m. for masculine, and n. for neuter.

⁸ For a fuller description of Proper Names given in the special Vocabularies, see Vocabulary at end of the book.

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN.

N. B. Careful attention should be given to the pronunciation of each syllable; the rules for *quantity* and *accent* will need to be called to mind very often. Remember that the final syllable of a Latin word is never accented.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe1 each word.

Causă.²
 Glōriārŭm.³
 Rīpae.
 Linguā.⁴
 Mĕmŏriā.⁵
 Linguās.
 Viā.
 Rīpās.
 Mĕmŏriae.
 Glōriae.
 Causās.
 Viăm.
 Mĕmŏriās.
 Viă.
 Glōriam.
 Linguārŭm.
 Causīs.
 Rīpā.
 Gĕnāvae.⁶

Write in Latin.

Of a² cause.
 Of the causes.
 With glory.
 For glory.
 With tongues.
 In the language.
 O Memory.
 In memory.
 Of the banks.
 By the way.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ To describe a noun is to tell its case, number, and gender, its stem and case-ending (termination).
- ² The Latin language has no article. In translating Latin nouns into English, a, an, or the may be supplied according to the sense. E. g. causă may be rendered a cause, the cause, or simply cause.
- Which syllable of gloriarum is accented? Why? (4) Numerals printed thus (4) refer to sections of this book.
 - 4 What is the quantity of the penult of lingua? Why? (3)
- ⁵ The Ablative may often be rendered by the preposition in and the noun: e. g. měmŏriā, in memory; linguā, in the language.
- ⁶ Locative Case; translate by the preposition at or in and the noun: e. g. Rômae, at Rome, or in Rome.

LESSON II.

-0020200-

NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION. - PREPOSITIONS.

11. Declension of dea and filia. A. & G. 36, e: A. & S. 93 e: B. 124, REM 1: B. & M. 57: G. 27, REMARK 3: H. 49, 4: C. 19, 6.

12. Use of Prepositions. A. & G. 260: A. & S. 428: B. 329, RULE LXXX.: B. & M. 981: G. 417: H. 432: C. 131.

VOCABULARY.

ăd, prep. w. acc.1 to. angustiae,2 ārum, f. narrow pass. circum, prep. w. acc. around. deă, ae, f. goddess. filiă, ae, f. daughter. the Marne. Mātrŏnă, ae, m. pěr, prep. w. acc. through. provinciă, ae, f. province. silvă, ae, f. forest. trans, prep. w. acc. across.

1 "prep. w. acc." signifies that &d is a preposition used with the Accusative.

² angustiae is rarely used in the singular. Notice that it is equivalent to two English words, *narrow*, an adjective, and *pass*, a noun.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe each noun.

1. Ad rīpām. 1 2. Ad rīpām Matrŏnae. 2 3. Trans Matrŏnām. 4. Deā. 3 5. Deae. 6. Deārūm. 7. Deābūs. 8. Trans viām. 9. Pēr angustiās. 4 10. Pēr silvās. 11. Pēr prēvinciām. 12. Circūm Gēnāvām. 13. Silvārūm. 14. In silvīs. 5 15. Ad fīliās deārūm.

Write in Latin.

The daughter.
 A daughter.
 O daughter.
 To the daughter of a goddess.
 To the Marne.
 To the Marne.
 To the Marne.
 To the daughters.
 Through the provinces.
 Through the forest.
 In the forest.
 In the forest.

Notes and Questions.

¹ When a noun is governed by a preposition, give the rule referred to under 12.

- ² Give the rule for gender of Matrona. (6)
- ⁸ See Ln. I., Note 2.
- 4 What is the quantity of the penult of angustias? Why? (3) Which syllable then has the accent? (4)
- ⁵ See Ln. V., 19 and Vy. Which cases of the First Declension are alike in the singular? Which in the plural? What is the difference between silva and silva? In Latin the prep. in usually precedes the place where.
 - ⁶ Translate by the proper preposition.
 - ⁷ See Ln. I., Note 5.



LESSON III.

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION.

13. Nouns in ŭs. A. & G. 38, servŭs; 40, a: A. & S. 95, dŏmĭnŭs; 97 (3): В. 126; 127, dŏmĭnŭs, Rem. 4: В. & М. 59; 61, dŏmĭnŭs: G. 29, hortŭs, Remark 4: Н. 51, servŭs, 1, 2, 1)-3), 8: С. 21 (dŏmĭnŭs), 1; 18, II.

14. Gender. A. & G. 39: A. & S. 95: B. 127, Rem. 3: B. & M. 71: G. 30: H. 51: C. 21; 24.

VOCABULARY.

antě, prep. w. acc. before. ămīcĭtiă, ae, f. friendship. ămīcus, ī, m. friend. carrus, i, m. cart, wagon. contra, prep. w. acc. against. Germānī, örŭm, m. the Germans. lēgātŭs, ī, m. legate, lieutenant. nŭměrůs, ī, m. number. ŏcŭlŭs, ī, m. eye. populus, i, m. people. Rhēnus, i, m. the Rhine. Rhodanus, i, m. the Rhone.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe each noun.

Pŏpŭlī.¹
 Pŏpŭlē.
 Pŏpŭlīs.
 Amīcĭtiä pŏpŭlī.
 Antĕ ŏcŭlōs pŏpŭlī.
 Nŭmĕrŭs carrōrŭm.
 Nŭmĕ-

rus Germānōrum. 8. Numērus amīcorum. 9. Numērus fīliārum. 10. Fīlia lēgātī.² 11. Kmīcō populī. 12. Contrā amīcum populī. 13. Contrā lēgātos populī. 14. Trans Rhodanum. 15. Populī³ amīcīs. 16. Ad Germānōs.

Write in Latin.

Of a friend.
 To a friend.
 Of friend.
 Of friends.
 The friends of the Germans.
 Against the friends of the Germans.
 Before the eyes of the Germans.
 Across the Rhine.
 Before the lieutenant's² eyes.
 The friendship of the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is the stem of populi? What are the case-endings of the Second Declension? Which cases are alike in the singular? Which in the plural? Which cases are like the same cases of the First Declension? What is the rule of gender for the Second Declension? (14) What is the rule of gender for the First Declension? What are the general rules for gender? (6)

² The Latin Genitive is often equivalent to the English possessive case:

filiă legăti is best rendered the lieutenant's daughter.

⁸ The Genitive usually stands after the noun which it limits, but often before it. In the latter case the Genitive is made emphatic: e. g., filiă ămici, the friend's daughter; but ămici filiă, the FRIEND's daughter.



LESSON IV.

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

15. Nouns in r and um. A. & G. 38: A. & S. 95: B. 127, a, b, Rem. 1, 2: B. & M. 60; 61; 63: G. 29; 31: H. 51, 2, 3)-6), 4, 1): C. 21, 1, 2; 22.

16. Prepositions used with the Ablative. A. & G. 152, b: A. & S. 430: B. 178: B. & M. 470: G. 418: H. 434: C. 186.

N. B. The list of prepositions used with the Δ blative should be committed to memory.

VOCABULARY.

ā, ăb,1 prep. w. abl. from, by. field, territory. ăger, ăgrī, m. béllum, ī, n. war. cum, prep. w. abl. with. ē, ex,1 prep. w. abl. out of. frumentum, i, n. corn. gĕnĕr, gĕnĕrī, m. son-in-law. Helvētiī, ōrum, m. the Helvetii. puěr, puěri, m. bou. regnum, ī, n. sovereignty, kingdom. sině, prep. w. abl. without. templum, i, n. temple. vĭr, vĭrī, m. man.

1 ā and ē are used only before words beginning with a consonant; ăb and ex before either a vowel or consonant.

Pronounce; translate; parse1 the nouns governed by prepositions.

Puĕrī,² puĕrōrum.
 Gĕnĕrō, gĕnĕrīs.
 Agrī Helvētiōrum.
 Cum virīs.
 Sinĕ virīs.
 Ex templō.³
 Cum Helvētiīs.
 Sinĕ regnō.
 Sinĕ frumentō.⁴
 Bellum cum Germānīs.
 Ex provinciā.
 Ab Helvētiīs.
 Pĕr agrōs Helvētiōrum.
 Regnum Germānōrum.

Write in Latin.

Of the war, of the wars.
 For the war, for the wars.
 The wars with the Helvetii.
 By the Germans.
 Without friendship.
 With the man's daughters.
 Without the boys.
 Oboys.
 Before the war with the Germans.
 Out of the Ehine.
 Out of the temples of the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Form for parsing a noun.—cum viris: viris masculine noun of the Second Declension; stem, viro; declined, vir, vir viro, virū, virā, vir, virō;

plural, $v\bar{v}r\bar{v}$, $v\bar{v}r\bar{v}r\bar{w}$, $v\bar{v}r\bar{v}$, $v\bar{v}r\bar{v}$, $v\bar{v}r\bar{v}$, $v\bar{v}r\bar{v}$; it is in the Ablative plural and governed by the preposition $c\bar{u}m$; rule (16). Repeat the rule giving the list of prepositions used with the Ablative.

- ² Which endings do nouns in r drop? Ans. The Nominative ŭs and the Vocative č. To which declension does pučri belong? Why? provincia? Why? How many declensions are there and how distinguished from one another? (8)
- ⁸ Notice that the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative of neuter nouns are alike and end in the plural in ă.
- 4 What is the quantity of the penult of frumento? Why? Which syllable then is accented? (3 and 4)
 - 5 Which syllable of Rhodanus takes the accent?
 - ⁶ See Ln. III., Note 2.



LESSON V.

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION. - PREPOSITIONS.

- 17. Nouns in ius or ium generally form the Genitive Singular with one i, while the accent remains unchanged: Cassī, of Cassius; fīlī, of the son; consilī, of counsel.
- 18. Vocative of filius and proper names in ius. A. & G. 40, c: A. & S. 97 (5): B. 128, a: B. & M. 65: G. 29, 2: H. 51, 5: C. 23, 3.
- 19. Use of in and sub. A. & G. 152, c: A. & S. 431: B. 179: B. & M. 987; 988: G. 419: H. 435, I.: C. 131, 3.
 - 20. deŭs stem deo is declined as follows:

S	ingular.	Plural.
Nom.	deŭs,	deī, diī, dī.
Gen.	deī,	deōrŭm, deūm.
Dat.	deō,	deīs, diīs, dīs.
Acc.	deŭm,	deōs.
Voc.	deŭs,	deī, diī, dī.
Abl.	deō,	deīs, diīs, dīs.

VOCABULARY.

Cassius, ī, m. Cassius. castrum, ī, n. fort; pl. camp.

concilium, i, n. council, assembly. consilium, i, n. counsel, plan. deŭs, ī, m. (see 20), god. ĕquŭs, ī, m. horse. ět, conj. and. fīliŭs, ī, m. son. in, prep. w. acc. or abl. into, in. jŭgŭm, ī, n. yoke. Lūciŭs, ī, m. Lucius. oppidum, i, n. tourn. sŭb, prep. w. acc. or abl. under.

Pronounce; translate; parse the nouns governed by prepositions.

1. Ad deōs ĕt¹ deās. 2. Cǔm deīs ĕt deābūs. 3. Antĕ ŏcŭlōs deōrǔm ĕt deārǔm. 4. In² oppĭdō. 5. In² oppĭdūm. 6. In castră³ Germānōrǔm. 7. Consĭliō⁴ deōrǔm. 8. Sĭnĕ consĭliīs. 9. In concĭliō Helvētiōrǔm. 10. Sǔb jǔgǔm. 11. Cǔm ĕquīs ĕt carrīs. 12. Cǔm ĕquīs ĕt carrīs Lūcī. 13. Fīliǔs Lūcī Cassī. 14. Fīlī⁵ Lūcī Cassī. 15. Pĕr oppĭdă Germānōrǔm. 6 16. Germānōrǔm 6 oppĭdā. 17. Trans Rhēnǔm ĕt Rhŏdǎnǔm. 18. Gĕnĕr Lūcī. 19. Cassī. 5

Write in Latin.

To sons and daughters.
 With sons and daughters.
 Before the eyes of sons and daughters.
 Into² the towns of the Germans.
 In² the Germans' camp.³
 Into the council of the Germans.
 By the plans of the gods.
 O son⁵ of Cassius.
 O Cassius.
 Under the yoke.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ ĕt is a conjunction; conjunctions connect words and clauses in Latin as in English. ĕt connects similar constructions; hence deās is governed the same as deōs by ĕd.
- ² Observe carefully the difference in meaning between in used with the Accusative and in used with the Ablative.
- 3 Observe that castrum means in the Singular α fort, but in the Plural α camp (military camp); a Roman camp was surrounded by a trench and a rampart.

4 See 17.

⁵ See 18 and A. & G. 241: A. & S. 402: B. 210, Rule VI.: B. & M. 974: G. 194, Rem. 3: H. 369: C. 120, 2.

⁶ What is the difference between oppidă Germanorum and Germanorum oppidă ? Ln. III., Note 3.

-

LESSON VI.

ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

- 21. Learn the declension of bŏnŭs (cārŭs). A. & G. 81: A. & S. 143: B. 154; 155, 1: B. & M. 189; 190, 1: G. 15, I., 2; 33: H. 146-148: C 39.
- 22. Agreement of Adjectives. A. & G. 186: A. & S. 332:
 B. 266, Rule LI.: B. & M. 650: G. 285: H. 438: C. 113, 1.

VOCABULARY.

bonus, a,1 um,1 good. cārŭs, ă, ŭm, dear, beloved. exemplum, i, n. example. lacrimă, ae, f. tear. magnus, ă, um, great, big, large. mălŭs, ă, ŭm, bad. multus, ă, ŭm, much; pl. many. parvus, ă, ŭm, small: rěliquus, ă, um, remaining. Romanus, a, um, Roman.

1 ă and ŭm are the feminine and neuter endings: recite as if it were printed bonus, bonu, bonum.

Pronounce; translate; parse the adjectives.1

Vǐr bŏnŭs,¹ fīliā bŏnă,² exemplŭm bŏnŭm.
 Vĭrī mălī, fīliae³ mălae, exemplă mălă.
 Cŭm fīliā cārā.
 Cŭm fīliās⁴ cārīs.
 Glōriă magnă Lūcī Cassī.⁴
 Exemplō pŏpŭlī Rōmānī.
 Multīs cŭm lacrĭmīs.
 Puĕrī

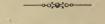
multī et parvī.⁵ 9. Oppĭdā multā et magnā. 10. Per multōs agrōs. 11. In relĭquā oppĭdā. 12. Amīcūs pŏpūlī Rōmānī. 13. Cum amīcīs pŏpūlī Rōmānī. 14. In prōvinciām magnām. 15. Carrī multī et parvī. 16. In templīs magnīs Germānōrum. ~

Write in Latin.

Through small⁶ fields.
 Through small towns.
 Through a small province.
 Through the remaining towns.
 The friendship of the Roman⁷ people.
 Many bad men.
 In a large temple.
 With many friends.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ Fórm for parsing an adjective. vǐr bǒnǔs: bǒnǔs is an adjective of the First and Second Declensions; Stems, Bŏno and Bŏna; declined, bŏnūs, bŏnā, bŏnūm; bŏnī, bŏnae, bŏnī; bŏnā, bŏnae, bŏnō; bŏnūm, bŏnām, bŏnām; bŏnā, bŏnās, bŏnīs, bŏnās, rule (22). Repeat the rule.
 - ² The adjective like the Genitive follows its noun unless emphatic.
 - 3 What irregularity in declension have deă and filiă?
 - 4 What irregularities in declension have filius and Cassius? (17 and 18)
- ⁵ The Romans wrote multi et parvi, many AND small; the English write many small, without the conjunction.
- ⁶ Notice that the adjective has the same number, gender, and ease as its noun (see 22).
- ⁷ In the Latin expression equivalent to Roman people, the adjective always follows its noun.



LESSON VII.

ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (continued).

23. A. & G. 82: A. & S. 143: B. 155, 2, 3: B. & M. 190, 2, 3: G. 34: H. 149, 150: C. 39.

24. Genitive in īŭs and Dative in ī. A. & G. 83, a: A. & S. 145; 146: B. 155, 4, Rem. 1: B. & M. 191: G. 35, Remark: H. 155, 1: C. 41.

The list of adjectives having their Genitive in ius and Dative in i should be committed to memory.

VOCABULARY.

aeger, aegra, aegrum,
älius, äliä, äliud,
liber, libera, liberum,
miser, misera, miserum,
nullus, ä, um,
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,
sõlus, ä, um,
tener, tenera, tenerum,
tötus, ä, um,
ullus, ä, um,
unus, ä, um,

sick.
other, another.
free.
wretched.
none, no.
beautiful.
alone.
tender, delicate.
whole, entire.
any.
one.

Pronounce; translate; parse the adjectives.

Cum fīliīs tenerīs.
 Ad viros aegros.
 Ad alios viros aegros.
 Pēr agros pulchros.
 Ab Helvētiīs liberīs.
 Contrā legātum miserum.
 Fīliae multae et pulchrae.
 Fīliārum pulchrārum.
 Fīliās et fīliābus pulchrīs.
 Virī multī et miserī.
 Totīs castrīs.
 Pēr Helvētios solos.
 Una per Helvētios via.
 Alia via nullā.
 Ullā sine causā.
 Aliī amīcō.
 Alīus amīcī.
 Unus ē fīliīs castr.
 Cassī.
 In 6 aliud 7 oppidum.

Notes and Questions.

1 How does filius Cassi differ from Cassi filius? (Ln. III., Note 3). How does ad viros aegros differ from ăd aegros viros? (Ln. VI., Note 2).

² See LN. VI., NOTE 5.

- ⁸ See Ln. I., Note 5.
- 4 What is the Nominative Neuter Singular of alius? The Genitive Singular? The Dative Singular?
 - ⁵ Translate unus ē fīliīs as if it read unus fīliorum.
 - 6 How is in to be rendered when used with the Ablative?
 - What adjectives have their Genitive in Ius and Dative in I?

LESSON VIII.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES. - APPOSITION.

25. Appositives. A. & G. 183: A. & S. 324: B. 265, Rule L.: B. & M. 622: G. 318; 319: H. 359, Note 2; 363: C. 112.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. ăd oppidum Genāvam (appositive), to the town of Geneva.
- 2. Titus Labienus lēgātus (appositive), Titus Labienus the lieutenant.

VOCABULARY.

aedificium, i, n. building, edifice. armă,1 ōrum, n. arms, weapons. Belgae, ārum, m. the Belgae. copiă, ae, f. plenty; pl. troops. Galliă, ae, f. Ganl. Lăbienus, i. m. Labienus. lŏcŭs,2 i, m. place. mātūrus, a, um, ripe. pěriculum, i, n. danger. private. prīvātus, a, um, Sēquănī, örum, m. the Sequani. Tĭtŭs, i, m. Titus. victoriă, ae, f. victory.

arma, like the English arms, is used only in the plural.

² löcüs is both masculine and neuter in the plural and is declined in that number as follows: Nom., löcī and löcā; Gen., löcīrŭm; Dat., löcīs; Acc., löcōs and löcā; Voc., löcī and löcā; Abl., löcīs.

Pronounce; translate; parse the nouns which are in apposition or governed by prepositions, and the adjectives.

Ad Titum¹ Labiēnum lēgātum.
 2. Cum fīliābus² pulchrīs Titī Labiēnī lēgātī.
 3. Pēr agrōs magnōs Titī Labiēnī lēgātī.
 4. Ex oppidō Genāvā.
 5. In oppidum Genāvam.
 6. Magnō cum perīculō.
 7. Reliqua prīvāta aedificia.
 8. Frumentum māturum in agrīs.
 9. Copia frumentī māturī

in agrīs. 10. In Galliam, in Gallia. 11. Ex⁴ Gallia, ā⁴ Gallia. 12. Victōria magna Sēquanorum. 13. Cum cōpiīs Belgārum. 14. Trans Rhŏdanum⁵ in Galliam. 15. Per multa loca. 16. Perīculum deōrum et deārum. 17. Nulla victōria sine armīs.

Write in Latin.

1. Through the entire town. 2. Through the entire town of Geneva.³ 3. Into the province of Gaul. 4. With the troops of Titus Labienus the lieutenant. 5. The remaining private wagons. 6. Into no place. 7. In one place. 8. With many dangers. 9. With many sons and daughters. 10. The Sequani alone.

Notes and Questions.

- 1 What are the general rules for gender? (6) What is the gender of nouns of the First Declension? (9) Of the Second Declension? (14)
 - ² What irregular case-endings have deă and filiă? (11)
 - ⁸ See 25 and Example 1.
- ⁴ è, ex signifies out of, from, in the sense of from within a place; ä, šb, from, in the sense of from near a place.
- ⁵ Which syllable of **Rhédănŭs** takes the accent? Why? (4) Which of Sequăni?
- ⁶ With which cases are prepositions used in Latin? Which prepositions are used only with the Ablative? Which with both the Ablative and Accusative? When are ĭn and sŭb used with the Ablative? When with the Accusative? (16, 19)

7 See A. & G. 184.

LESSON IX.

VERBS: PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS.

26. Learn the following definitions when they are given in the grammar: Use of the Verb; Transitive and Intransitive Verbs; Active Voice; Use of the Indicative Mood; Use of the Present Tense; Person and Number; Conjugation.

A. & G. 108, a-d; 111; 121; 122, a; 264; 276.

A. & S. 190-193; 198 (1); 201; 208; 217, a, b; 461.

B. 26; 41, b: 43; 44; 57; 63; 68; 292, RULE LVI.

B. & M. 258; 259, 1-3; 262; 266; 270; 271; 272; 1079; 1080.

G. 15, III.; 109; 204; 245; 246; 218; 116; 117.

H. 192; 193; 194; 195, I.; 474; 466; 199; 201.

C. 64; 188; 66, 1, or 189.

LESSON X.

--0050500-

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

- 27. Personal Endings of the Active Voice and Stem. A. & G. 21; 116, Sing., Plur.: A. & S. 55; 209; 213 (1): B. 64, a; 69: B. & M. 333, Active Voice; 274: G. 111: H. 247, Person., Act., Meaning; 250: C. pp. 102, 104.
- 28. The Present Stem¹ is found in the Present Infinitive Active by dropping the ending re in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, and ere in the Third: e.g. Putare is a Present Infinitive Active and Puta its Present Stem; so did from Dīcere.
- 29. Learn the conjugation ² and meanings of the Present Indicative Active of ămŏ. A. & G. 128: A. & S. 222: B. 74: B. & M. 282: G. 119: H. 205; 247, 1: C. 74.
- 30. Observe that the Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation is conjugated by annexing the Personal Endings (27) to the Present Stem (28); also that the *first person singular* takes the termination ŏ, which absorbs the final stem-vowel a.

VOCABULARY.

ămő, ămārě,
convŏcő, convŏcārě,
confirmő, confirmārě,
importő, importārě,
occŭpő, occŭpārě,
vastő, vastārě,

love.⁸
call together, summon.
establish, strengthen.
bring in, import.
seize, occupy.
lay waste, devastate.

Pronounce; translate; inflect the verbs and give their elements.4

1. Importās, importātis, importāmus. 2. Amāmus, amant, amat. 3. Convoco, convocas, convocat. 4. Convocamus, convocatis, convocant. 5. Confirmant, confirmatis, confirmamus. 6. Confirmat, confirmas, confirmo. 7. Occupo, amas, importat. 8. Importo, amatis, occupant. 9. Occupamus, importatis, amo. 10. Occupas, occupat, occupatis.

Write in Latin.

1. I am importing, you are establishing, he is loving.
2. We occupy, you summon, they devastate. 3. We do import, you do devastate, they do summon. 4. I devastate, you devastate, he devastates. 5. We are devastating, you are devastating, they are devastating.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The Present Stem is named *The First Stem* in some grammars; in others, *The First Root*.

² The *conjugation* of a verb is the change made in its ending to express voice, mood, tense, person, and number.

³ Only the *general* meaning of the verb, without reference to person, number, mood, tense, or voice will be given in the Vocabularies. The *special* meanings can be learned with aid of the grammar.

* The elements of a verb in the present tense are the stem and personal ending: e. g. ămāmūs has the stem āmā, signifying love, and the personal ending mūs, signifying we.

⁵ importas may be rendered you are importing, you do import, or you import; translate each verb the three ways.

⁶ What is the Present Stem of putare? What does the personal ending nt signify? mus? s? tis? Define the Indicative Mood. The Active Voice. The Present Tense. How is the Present Stem found? (28)

1

LESSON XI.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

- 31. A. & G. 171; 172; 180; 181: A. & S. 309-311: B. 203, a-g: B. & M. 616, 1, 4-10; 618-620: G. 192; 193: H. 346; 347; 350; 356, 1, 2; 358; 360: C. 107; 108; 108, 1, 2, 3, 6.
- 32. Subject Nominative. A. & G. 173: A. & S. 316: B. 205, Rule I.: B. & M. 633: G. 194: H. 368: C. 109.
- 33. Agreement of Verb. A. & G. 204: A. & S. 316: B. 287, RULE LV.: B. & M. 634: G. 202: H. 460: C. 110, 1.
- 34. Direct Object. A. & G. 237: A. & S. 392: B. 212, Rule VII.: B. & M. 712: G. 329: H. 371: C. 121, 1.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Puer (subject) amat (predicate), the boy loves.
- Titus concilium¹ (direct object) convocat, Titus summons a council.

VOCABULARY.

dē, prep. w. abl., down from, concerning, for. expugnő, expugnārě, storm, capture. Gallus, i, m. a Gaul. impěriŭm, ī, n. empire, supreme power. pugnő, pugnārě, fight, contend. Romanus, i, m. a Roman. servus, ī, m. slane. vexŏ, vexārĕ, disturb, harass.

Pronounce; translate; name the subject and predicate; conjugate the verbs; parse the nouns and adjectives.

Cassiŭs² oppĭdŭm³ expugnăt.⁴
 Helvētiī oppĭdŭm expugnant.
 Gallī tōtŭm⁵ oppĭdŭm occŭpant.
 Gallī multă oppĭdă occŭpant.
 Sēquănī agrōs vastant.
 Agrōs pulchrōs vastāmŭs.⁶
 Agrōs magnōs vastās.
 Cassiŭs coneĭliŭm⁻ convŏcăt.
 Germānī Gallōs vexant.
 Rō-

mānī oppĭdŭm Gĕnāvăm⁸ expugnant. 11. Tǐtŭs Lăbiēnŭs lēgātŭs oppĭdŭm occŭpăt. 12. Rōmānī dē impĕriō⁹ pugnant. 13. Dē impĕriō pugnāmŭs. 14. Dē impĕriō pugnātǐs.

Write in Latin.

1. The slave fights. 2. The slaves are fighting. 10 3. The Gauls are storming the town. 1 4. The Gauls storm many towns. 5. The Helvetii are laying waste the fields. 6. The Gauls fight for empire. 7. The Germans occupy the town of Geneva. 8. Cassius the legate summons a large council. 9. We occupy the entire town.

Notes and Questions.

- 1 Observe that in a Latin sentence the subject stands first, the verb last, and the object between.
 - ² See 32 and Ln. IV., Note 1.

8 See 34.

- 4 Why is expugnăt in the third person singular? (33)
- ⁵ See 24 and 22. Which adjectives have their Genitive in 1% and Dative in 1?
- ⁶ The subject of a verb in the *first* and *second* person is generally expressed by the personal ending alone; hence **vastāmūs** includes both the simple subject and the simple predicate: devastate we.

 vastā mūs.

7 See 17.

8 See 25.

⁹ See 16.

10 See LN. X., NOTE 5.

LESSON XII.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION. — IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES.

35. Learn the Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of amo. A. & G. 118 (for endings); 128 (for conjugation): A. & S. 222; 224 1, 2: B. 72, Indicative; 74: B. & M. 282: G. 111, 1-3; 119: H. 205; 247, 1; 243: C. p. 102 (for endings); p. 76 (for conjugation).

36. Use of the Imperfect and Future Tenses. A. & G. 277; 278: A. & S. 461; 464: B. 57: B. & M. 1087; 1090; G. 222; 234: H. 468; 470: C. 66, 2, 3.

37. Observe that the same Stem and Personal Endings are used in the conjugation of the Imperfect and Future as in the Present; that between these, however, there is a Tense-Sign, ba in the Imperfect and bi in the Future; that the first singular of the Future has the termination o, like the Present; that in the third plural of the Future u takes the place of i.

VOCABULARY.

Aquileia, ae, f. Aquileia.
Aquitania, ae, f. Aquitania.
Aquitani, ōrum, m. the Aquitani.
circum, prep. w. acc. around, near.
Helvētius, ă, um, of the Helvetii.
hiemo, hiemare, pass the winter.
supero, superare, overcome.

Pronounce; translate; conjugate the verbs and give their elements.1

Titus regnum occupāt.
 Titus regnum occupābāt.
 Regnum occupābāmus.
 Regnum occupābāmus.
 Regnum occupābō.
 Cōpiae² circum Aquilēiam³ hiemābant.
 Aquitāni circum Genāvam hiemābunt.
 Aquitānos superābīs.
 Rōmāni Helvētios superābunt.
 Galli multa loca⁴ in Aquitāniā⁵ occupant.
 Multi Germāni agros Helvētios vastābant.

Write in Latin.

1. We are overcoming, we were overcoming, we shall overcome. 2. You are storming, you were storming, you will storm. 3. Titus will storm the town. 4. Titus was storming the town. 5. Titus storms many towns. 6. The Romans will pass the winter near Aquileia. 7. The Aquitani are passing the winter near Geneva. 8. The Gauls were fighting for 6 empire. 9. The Romans fight for glory.

Notes and Questions.

1 The elements of a verb in the Imperfect and Future Tenses are the stem, love will you has the Stem ama, love; the tense-sign, personal ending: e.g. amā - bī - tīs

Future Tense-Sign bi, will; the Personal Ending tis, you.

- 2 What meaning has copiae in the Singular? Ln. VIII., Vy.
- ⁴ Decline locă. Ln. VIII., Vy., 2. 3 See 12.
- 5 See 19.
- ⁶ For, in the sense of concerning, about, is to be rendered by de.
- ⁷ How is the Present Stem found? (28) Remember that the Present Stem and the tenses formed upon it - Present, Imperfect, Future - denote incomplete action.

LESSON XIII.

MODIFIERS OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE; DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT; GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

- 38. Modifiers. A. & G. 178, a, b; 179: B. 288, a: B. & M. 1401, 1-4; 1405, II., 1-4: H. 357, 1; 359, NOTE 1; 361, 1: C. 108, 5.
- 39. Indirect Object. A. & G. 224: A. & S. 374, (2): B. 239, RULE XXVIII.: B. & M. 818; 819: G. 344: H. 384, I., II.: C. 149: 150.
- 40. Genitive with Nouns. A. & G. 213: A. & S. 351: B. 226; 230, RULE XIX.: B. & M. 751: G. 357; 358; 360: H. 395: C. 133.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Titus Lăbienus legătus consilia Gallorum enunciăt, Titus Labienus the lieutenant reports the plans of the Gauls.
- 2. Cassius Tito filiam in mātrimonium dăt,2 Cassius gives to Titus a daughter in marriage.

Notes on the Examples.

1 Of this sentence, Titus Labienus is the subject and is modified by legatus, an appositive : consilia Gallorum enunciat is the predicate and is made up of the verb enunciat and its modifier consilia, a direct object; consilia is modified by Gallorum, a genitive. G. 284, I., II., REM.; 326, I., II.

² Of this sentence, Cassius is the subject and is not modified; Tito filiam in mātrimonium dāt is the predicate, and is made up of the verb dāt and its modifiers, viz: Tito, an indirect object; filiam, a direct object; and in mātrimonium, a phrase.

VOCABULARY.

dő, dărě, give.

ēnunciő, ēnunciārě, report.

mātrimōnium, i, n. marriage.

in mātrimōnium dărě, to give in marriage.

Pronounce; translate; analyze; 1 conjugate the verbs; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Cassius² consĭlia Belgārum³ ēnunciābĭt. 2. Rōmānis⁴ consĭlia Belgārum ēnunciābĭt. 3. Tītus fīliam ĭn⁵ mātrimōnium dăbĭt.⁶ 4. Lēgātō fīliam ĭn mātrimōnium dăbĭt. 5. Lēgātis fīlias ĭn mātrimōnium dămūs. 6. Helvētii multa lŏca ĭn Aquītānia occūpant. 7. Cassius concĭlium Rōmānōrum convŏcăt. 8. Deos² et deas³ ĭn templa convŏcăt. 9. Rōmāni oppĭda multa et magna³ expugnābant. 10. Amīcĭtiam cūm Helvētiis confirmant. 11. Tōtum¹o oppĭdum ullo¹o sĭnĕ pĕrīcūlo occūpābĭtĭs. 12. Galli agros multos et pulchros³ ĭn Aquītānia vastābunt.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ To analyze a simple sentence is to name its subject and predicate; the modifiers of the subject, if any; the verb, and its modifiers, if any; see Notes on the Examples.
 - What is the Genitive and Vocative of Cassius? (17 and 18)

8 See 40.

4 See 39.

- ⁵ A preposition with its noun is a *Phrase*; when the *Phrase* limits a verb, as in this sentence, it is an *Adverbial Phrase*; when it limits a noun, as in sentence 6, it is an *Adjective Phrase*.
- ⁶ Observe that in do the characteristic a is short; in the other verbs of the First Conjugation it is long.

7 See 20.

8 See 11.

9 See LN. VI., NOTE 5.

10 See 24.

LESSON XIV.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION: PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES.

- 41. Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active of ămő. A. & G. 118; 128: A. & S. 210; 213 (2); 222; 224 (5): B. 75: B. & M. 282: G. 120: H. 205; 243, Tense-Signs of Plup. and F. Perf.; 247, 1, 2: C. p. 102; pp. 76, 77.
- 42. Use of the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses. A. & G. 280; 281: A. & S. 462 (2), (3): B. 57: B. & M. 1096; 1098: G. 233; 236: H. 472; 473: C. 194; 195.
- 43. What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative? A. & G. 115, c; 279: A. & S. 462 (1): B. 60: B. & M. 1092; 1093: G. 226; 227; 231: H. 471, I., II.: C. 66, 4.
- 44. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active of every verb, whatever its conjugation may be, are conjugated like the same tenses of ămŏ. These tenses are formed on the Perfect Stem and denote completed acron.
- 45. The Perfect Stem is found in the Perfect Indicative Active by dropping the ending i: e. g. Perfect Indicative VASTĀVĪ, Perfect Stem VASTĀV.

VOCABULARY.

confirmŏ,	confirmārĕ,	confirmāvī,1	establish, strengthen.
convŏcŏ,	convŏcārĕ,	convŏcāvī,	call together, summon.
dŏ,	dărĕ,	dĕdī,4	give.
expugnŏ,	expugnārĕ,	expugnāvī,	storm, capture.
hiĕmŏ,	hiĕmāre,	hiĕmāvī,	pass the winter.
occupă,	occupāre,	occupāvī,	seize, occupy.
Rōmă, ae,	f.		Rome.
sŭpĕrŏ,	sŭpĕrārĕ,	sŭpĕrāvī,	overcome, subdue.
vastŏ,	vastārĕ,	vastāvī,	lay waste, devastate.
vexŏ,	vexārĕ,	vexāvī,	disturb, harass.

¹ In this Vocabulary the First Person Singular of the Present Indicative Active, the Present Infinitive Active, and the First Person Singular of the Perfect Indicative Active are given.

Pronounce; translate; conjugate and give a synopsis 1 of the Indicative Mood of each verb.

1. Cassius multos agros vastāvīt.² 2. Concīlium Gallōrum convŏcāvĕrŏ.³ 3. Galli tōtum oppĭdum occŭpāvĕrant. 4. Helvētii castra occŭpāvĕrint. 5. Rōmānī agrum Helvētium vastāvērunt.² 6. Amīcĭtiam cŭm Rōmānis confirmāvĕrīt. 7. Cōpiae circŭm Rōmam hiĕmāvērĕ.² 8. Cassius Tīto fīliam ĭn mātrĭmōnium dĕdĭt.² 9. Rōmānī Helvētios vexāvērunt.² 10. Sēquăni Germānos sŭpĕrāvērunt.² 11. Circŭm Rōmam hiĕmāvĕrant. 12. Oppĭdum Aquĭlēiam occŭpāvī.

Write in Latin.

1. The Aquitani have stormed the town. 2. The Aquitani will have stormed the town. 3. The Aquitani had stormed the town. 4. I have given a daughter in marriage. 5. I had given a daughter in marriage. 6. I shall have given a daughter in marriage. 7. I gave a daughter in marriage to the son of Cassius. 8. You have summoned a council of Romans. 9. You had summoned a council of Romans.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ A Synopsis of the Indicative Mood consists of the First Person Singular of each tense: e. g. the synopsis of vastāvĭt is vastō, vastābŏm, vastābō, vastāvī, vastāvĕrām, vastāvĕrō.
- ² Translate each Perfect in accordance with both its uses: Cassius vastāvīt, Cassius has laid waste, and Cassius laid waste. (See 43)
- 8 Which tenses are formed on the *Perfect Stem* and what action do they denote? (44) Which are formed on the *Present Stem* and what action do they denote? (LN. XII., NOTE 7.) The Pluperfect denotes that an action is completed in what time? (42) The Future Perfect? The Present Tense denotes that an action is going on in what time? (26) The Imperfect Tense? (36) The Future Tense? Give the elements of each verb in the

Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses: e. g. ioved had they has the Perfect

Stem ămāv, loved; the Pluperfect Tense-Sign ĕra, had; the Personal Ending nt, they.

 4 See Ln. XIII., Note 6; observe that the Perfect stem of $d\bar{o}$ is $d\bar{e}d,$ not $d\bar{a}v.$

LESSON XV.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION: IMPERATIVE MOOD.

46. Learn the Imperative Mood, Active Voice, of ămă and its meanings. A. & G. 128; 118, for personal endings: A. & S. 213 (3); 222: B. 74, a; 64, b, for pers. endings: B. & M. 282: G. 119: H. 205; 247, 3, for pers. endings: C. p. 77; p. 104 for pers. endings.

47. Use of the Imperative. A. & G. 269: A. & S. 527: B. 312, RULE LXXI.: B. & M. 1110: G. 259: H. 487: C. 247, 1, 2.

VOCABULARY.

ăvus, ī, m.

Divitiācus, ī, m.
juvo, juvāre, juvī,
mātūro, mātūrāre, mātūrāvī,
nātūra, ae, f.
nuncio, nunciāre, nunciāvī,
proelium, ī, n.
socer, socerī, m.
vīto, vītāre, vītāvī,
voco, vocāre, vocāvī,

grandfather.
Divitiacus.
help, aid.
make haste, hasten.
nature.
announce.
battle.
father-in-law.
avoid, shun.
call.

Pronounce; translate; parse the Nouns; conjugate the Imperatives and give the rule for their use. (47)

- 1. Jŭvā, mātūrā, nunciā. 2. Jŭvātŏ, mātūrātŏ, nunciātŏ.
- 3. Juvāte, mātūrāte, nunciāte. 4. Vītā, Divitiace, proelium.
- 5. Vītā, O ave, perīculum. 6. Date, virī, Romānīs arma.5
- 7. Vŏcā, sŏcĕr, puĕros. 8. Matūrā, Cassī,6 Tito4 nunciāre.
- 9. Mātūrātě, vĭrī, oppĭdum expugnārě. 10. Vastātě agrōs.
- 11. Vastātě multōs agrōs. 12. Vastātě tōtăm prōvinciăm.

Write in Latin.

- 1. Call the men. 2. Help the boys. 3. Shun the danger.
- 4. Avoid a battle, Divitiacus. 5. Summon a council, Cassius.
- 6. Call the men, my grandfather. 7. Announce to Cassius.
- 8. Make haste to announce to Divitiacus. 9. Men, give arms to the Belgae. 10. Import corn.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ Observe that the Personal Endings are added to the Present Stem (28); that the Second Person Singular of the Present is the same in form as the Present Stem; that, like the English, the Latin Imperative has no First Person.
 - ² See Ln. V., Note 5.
 - 3 0 ave, O grandfather, or my grandfather. 4 See 39.
 - ⁵ See Ln. VIII., Vy. ⁶ See 18.

What is the Present Stem of each verb in the lesson? The Perfect Stem? Which Stem is used in the Imperative? Does the Imperative then denote incomplete or completed action? What are the Personal Endings of the Imperative?



LESSON XVI.

VERBS: INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, GERUND, AND SUPINE.

- **48.** Learn the Active Infinitives and Participles, the Gerund and Supine of ămō. A. & G. 118; 128, page 93; 289: A. & S. 214; 222, page 108: B. 51; 53, a-d; 65; 66; 72; 74, a; 75: B. & M. 264, IV.; 265; 282: G. 110; 119; 120: H. 200, I. –IV.; 205; 248, ACTIVE: C. p. 104; pp. 77, 78.
- **49.** Principal Parts (Stem Forms). A. & G. 122, b: A. & S. 220, Note: B. 73: B. & M. 275: G. 118: H. 202; 203; 220, Conj. I.: C. 69.
- 50. The Supine Stem is found in the Supine in um by dropping the um: e.g. cūrātum is a Supine in um and cūrāt its Supine Stem.
- 51. Each Verb has regularly three Stems, the Present (28), the Perfect (45), and the Supine (50). Name the three Stems of each verb in the following Vocabulary.

VOCABULARY.1

ămŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,²	love.
cūrŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,2	care for.
√dŏ,	dărĕ,³	dědī,	dătŭm,8	give.
dŏ, jŭvŏ,	jŭvārĕ,	jūvī,	jūtŭm,	help, aid.

něgŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	deny.
pugnő,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	fight.
vastŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	lay waste, devastate.
vexŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	disturb, harass.
vŏcŏ.	ārĕ.	āvī.	ātŭm.	call.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ The Principal Parts (49) will be given hereafter in the Vocabularies; these Parts should always be learned.
- ² Most verbs of the First Conjugation form their Perfect and Supine like amo. To form the Principal Parts let are, avi, atum take the place of final o in the Present Indicative Active: e. g. cūro, cūrare, cūravi, cūratum.

 ³ See LN. XIII., Note 6.

How many Infinitives has each verb in the Active Voice? On which Stem is each formed? Name the Infinitives of do, curo, juvo, and vasto. What is the Ending of each Infinitive? On which Stems are the Active Participles formed? What is the Ending of each Participle? What is the Future Active Participle of do, nego, pugno? What is the Present Participle of each? On which Stem is the Gerund formed? Form and decline the Gerund of do and curo. What are the Endings of the Supine?

LESSON XVII.

0050500

USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

52. Infinitive as Object. A. & G. 272: A. & S. 533 (1): B. 315, f: B. & M. 1148: G. 527: H. 534: C. 237.

53. Subject of the Infinitive. A. & G. 240, f: A. & S. 530: B. 225, Rule XVI.: B. & M. 1136: G. 526, second part: H. 536: C. 109, 3.

EXAMPLES.

- Dīcīt Rōmānōs¹ oppidum² expugnārĕ,³ he says (that⁴) the Romans⁴ are storming⁴ the town.
- 2. Dīcīt Rōmānōs oppīdum expugnāvissē, he says (that) the Romans have stormed the town; or he says (that) the Romans stormed the town.

3. Dīcīt Rōmānōs oppīdum expugnāturōs esse, he says (that) the Romans are about to storm the town; or he says (that) the Romans will storm the town.

Notes on the Examples.

¹ See 53. ² See 34.

³ The whole expression Rômānôs oppĭdŭm expugnārē is the Direct Object of dicit (see 52).

⁴ Observe that the Infinitive expugnare is translated by the Indicative are storming; the Subject Accusative Romanos, by the Subject Nominative the Romanos; and the Conjunction that is supplied.

⁵ Observe that the Participle of the Future Infinitive Active agrees with the Subject of the Infinitive in gender, number, and case.

VOCABULARY.

, m.			the Aedui.
, m.			Ariovistus.
ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,1	show, declare.
			he says.
ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	think, suppose.
ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	deny.
ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	announce.
ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	think.
	ārĕ, ārĕ, ārĕ, ārĕ, ārĕ,	ārě, āvī, ārě, āvī, ārě, āvī,	, in. ārē, āvī, ātŭm, ārē, āvī, ātŭm, ārē, āvī, ātŭm, ārē, āvī, ātŭm,

Pronounce; translate; parse the Nouns and Infinitives.

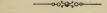
Dīcĭt² Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexārĕ.³
 Pŭtăt Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexātūrōs essĕ.
 Kunciāt Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexātūrōs essĕ.
 Existĭmāt Ariovistŭm regnŭm in Galliā occūpātūrŭm essĕ.
 Tǐtŭs existĭmāt Ariovistŭm regnŭm ĭn Galliā occŭpāvissĕ.
 Ariovistŭs nunciāt Germānōs agrŭm Helvētiŭm vastātūrōs essĕ.
 Dīcĭt Rōmānōs frūmentŭm importātūrōs essĕ.
 Dīcĭt Gallōs frūmentŭm Rōmānīs⁴ dătūrōs essĕ.
 Dīcĭt Aeduōs Rōmānīs⁴ armă dătūrōs essĕ.

Write in Latin.

 He says² (that⁵) the Sequani are about to harass the Helvetii.
 He says (that) the Germans are laying waste the Helvetian territory. 3. Titus thinks (that) the Romans will give corn to the Aedui. 4. Titus thinks (that) the Romans are importing corn. 5. He says (that) Cassius has summoned a council of Romans. 6. He announces (that) the Aquitani have stormed the towns.

Notes.

- ¹ The verbs in this Vy. may have as Object an Infinitive with its Subject Accusative.
- ² Study carefully the EXAMPLES and NOTES ON THE EXAMPLES before attempting to translate the sentences.
- ⁸ Form for parsing an Infinitive. vexārě is a Transitive (26) Verb; Principal Parts (49), vexő, vexārĕ, vexāvī, vexātĭm; Stems, VEXA (28), VEXĀV (45), VEXĀT (50); Infinitives of the Active Voice, vexārĕ, vexāvissĕ, vexātūrŭs essĕ; it is made in the Present Infinitive Active and with its Subject Rômānōs is the Object of dioĭt; rule (see 52).
 - 4 See 39.
- ⁵ Words in parentheses are not to be translated; see also Notes on the Examples, 4.



LESSON XVIII.

GENERAL EXERCISE. - ABLATIVE.

54. Ablative of Means. A. & G. 248, c 1: A. & S. 407: B. 258, Rule XLIII.: B. & M. 873: G. 403: H. 420: C. 166.

VOCABULARY.

animus, i, m.
concilió, ārĕ, āvī, ātum,
confirmŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātum,
intĕr, prep. w. acc.
Nŏrēiā, ae, f.
oppugnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātum,
proptĕr, prep. w. acc.
Trēvĭrī, ōrum, m.
verbum, ī, n.

mind.
win, conciliate.
establish, encourage.
between, among.
Noreia.
attack, besiege, assault.
on account of.
the Treviri.
word.

Pronounce; translate; analyze;1 parse.

1. Intěr² Sēquănos ět Helvētios. 2. Proptěr² angustias. 3. Nŏrēiam oppugnāmus.³ 4. Nŏrēiam oppugnābant. 5. Rōmāni Nŏrēiam oppugnāvērunt.⁴ 6. Trēvĭri Nŏrēiam oppugnābunt. 7. Dīcĭt Trēvĭros⁵ Nŏrēiam oppugnātūros⁶ essĕ.² 8. Nŏrēiam oppugnātĭs. 9. Nŏrēiam oppugnātč.⁶ 10. Divitiācus Gallōrum anĭmos verbisゅ confirmāvĭt. 11. Divitiācus Gallōrum anĭmos verbis confirmātūrum essĕ. 13. Cassius regnum concĭliāvĭt. 14. Cassius regnum cōpiis concĭliābăt. 15. Cassius regnum cōpiis Divitiăco ¹o conciliābĭt. 16. Nĕgăt Cassium regnum cōpiis Divitiăco concĭliātūrum essĕ. 17. Tĭtus Divitiāco ¹o fīliam in mātrĭmōnium ¹¹ dĕdĭt.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ See Ln. XIII., Note 1. ² See Ln. XIII., Note 5.
- **Form for parsing a verb in the Indicative Mood. oppugnāmus is a Transitive (26) Verb; Principal Parts (49), oppugnō, oppugnārē, oppugnāvē, oppugnātām; it is of the First Conjugation, because the characteristic vowel is ā; Stems, oppugnā, oppugnāv, oppugnāt; Synopsis (Ln. XIV., Note 1), oppugnō, oppugnābām, oppugnābē, oppugnāvē, oppugnāvēram, oppugnāvēro; conjugated, oppugnō, oppugnās, oppugnāt, oppugnāmās, oppugnātīs, oppugnānt; it is made in the First Person Plural of the Present Indicative Active to agree with its Subject, a pronoun (nos, we) understood; rule (33).
 - 4 What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative? (43)
- ⁷ See 52. In what two ways may the Future Infinitive be translated? See Ln. XVII., Example 3.
- ⁸ See 47. How does this form differ from the Second Person Plural of the Present *Indicative*?
- 9 verbis, with words, or by means of words; it is a modifier (38) of confirmavit.
 - ¹⁰ See **39**.
- 11 See 19.

LESSON XIX.

THIRD DECLENSION: NOUNS.

55. Stem and Declension. A. & G. 32, a, b; 33, a-g; A. & S. 89; 90, a, b: B. 36; 121: B. & M. 44-47: G. 16; 25; 26: H. 46-47, including fine print.

56. A. & G. 48, a-d; 49, w. declension of consul, nomen, honor, leo, frater, virgo, corpus: A. & S. 103, a-f; 104, decl. of consul, leo, virgo, nomen, pater; 107, honor: B. 130; 135, w. declension of consul, virgo, leō, nomen, amor, pater: B. & M. 73-77; 90-97, including the Paradigms: G. 36-39; 40; 42; 43; 44-46; 47: H. 55; 56; 57, Case-Suffixes; 60, Paradigms, 1, 3, 4: C. 26, declension of rex, nomen, leo, pater, virgo, corpus.

VOCABULARY.

· accūso, āre, āvi, ātum, accuse, censure. Caesăr, Caesăris, m. Caesar. consul, consulis, m. consul. citra, prep. w. acc. this side of. flūmen, flūminis, n. river. frātěr, frātris, m. brother. hŏnŏr, hŏnōrĭs, m. honor. māter, mātris, f. mother. pătěr, pătris, m. father. Sēguănă, ae, m. the Seine. sŏrŏr, sŏrōrĭs, f. sister. uxŏr, uxōrĭs, f. wife.

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun and give its Stem and Endings; parse the verbs.

1. A¹ flūmĭnĕ Rhŏdăno.² 2. E¹ flūmĭnĕ Rhŏdăno. 3. Ad flūmĕn Sēquănam. 4. Citrā flūmĕn Rhēnum. 5. Pătĕr sŏrōrĕm in mātrĭmōnium dat. 6. Mātĕr sŏrōrĕm in mātrĭmōnium dĕdit. 7. Caesăr sŏrōrĕm in mātrĭmōnium dĕdit. 8. Tĭtus dīcĭt Caesărĕm sŏrōrĕm in mātrĭmōnium dĕdisse. 9. Caesăr uxōrĕm accūsāvit. 10. Caesăr consŭl² Tĭtum lēgātum² accūsāvĕrat. 11. Nĕgat Caesărĕm consŭlĕm Tĭtum

lēgātum accūsāvisse. 12. Caesărĭs³ uxōrĕm accūsābĭmus. 13. Pătrĕm et mātrĕm et frātrĕm accūsant.

Write in Latin.

To the river Rhone.
 This side of the river Seine.
 Across the river Rhine.
 Caesar gives a sister in marriage.
 Caesar has given to the consul a daughter in marriage.
 He thinks (that) Caesar has given a daughter in marriage.
 We shall accuse Caesar the consul.
 Brothers accuse sisters.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See Ln. IV., Vy., and Ln. VIII., Note 4.

² See 25. ⁸ See Ln. III., Notes 2 and 3.

How is the Stem of a noun found? What are the Case-Endings of the Third Declension? Which Case-Endings do nouns with *liquid* Stems omit? How does the Stem of fluminis differ in form from the Nominative Singular?

LESSON XX.

000000

THIRD DECLENSION (continued).

57. A. & G. 21; 32, a, b; 33, a-g; 44; 45, a-c; 46: A. & S. 55; 101, a, c; 102; 104, decl. of caput: B. 130-134, including the Paradigms: B. & M. all of 86-88: G. 37; 39; 51; 54; 56; 57: H. 24, 1; 30; 36, 2; all of 56-59: C. Remainder of 26; 27.

VOCABULARY.

and. atquě 1 or āc,1 conj. căpitis, n. head. căpŭt, guard. custos, custodis, m. Dumnörix, Dumnörigis, m. Dumnorix. Jūra, ae, m. the Jura. soldier. mīlĕs, mīlĭtĭs, m. mountain. mons, montis, m.

pars,	partĭs, f.	part.
princeps,	principis, m.	chief.
rādix,	rādīcĭs, f.	root.
rex,	rēgĭs, m.	king.
urbs,	urbĭs, f.	city.

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, give its Stem and form its Nominatives.

1. Ad rēgěm Germānōrum. 2. Ad princīpěm Galliae prōvinciae. 3. Ad montěm² Jūram. 4. Sŭb³ montě Jūrā. 5. Intěr montěm Jūram et flūměn Rhŏdănum. 6. Circům urběm² Rōmam.⁴ 7. In urbě Rōmā. 8. Proptěr hŏnōrēs Caesăris. 9. In partēs Galliae. 10. Cům Dumnŏrigě fratrě Divitiăci. 11. Rex atquě ămīcus. 12. Sĭně rēgě atquě sĭně ămīcis. 13. Căpĭtă mīlĭtům. 14. Ad rādīcēs montis. 15. Cum princĭpě tōtīus Galliae. 16. Urbēs multae et magnae.⁵

Notes.

atquĕ is used before vowels and consonants; āc, only before consonants.
 A. & G. 47 α, page 27: A. & S. 109, α: B. 137, α, 1: B. & M.
 116; 119: G. 54, REMARK: H. 64, urbs: C. p. 26, dens.

3 See sub, in General Vocabulary at end of the book.

⁴ Words not given in the Special Vocabularies can be found in the General Vocabulary.

⁵ See Ln. VI., Note 5.







LESSON XXI.

THIRD DECLENSION. - TWO ACCUSATIVES.

58. Two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing. A. & G. 239, 1: A. & S. 394 (1): B. 216, Rule VIII.: B. & M. 715: G. 334: H. 373: C. 126.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Caesărem consulem creaverunt, they elected Caesar consul.
- 2. Oppidum appellant Gěnāvam, they call the town Geneva.

VOCABULARY.

appellŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, cīvĭtās, cīvĭtātis, f. creŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, lēgātio, lēgātionĭs, f. lex, lēgīs, f. mors, mortīs, f. pax, pācīs, f. post, prep. w. acc. proxĭmŭs, ă, ŭm, Pyrēnaeŭs, ă, ŭm, senātŏr, senātōrīs, m. suŭs, ă, ŭm, virtūs, virtūtīs, f.

name, call.
state.
elect, appoint.
embassy.
law.
death.
peace.
after.
nearest.
Pyrenean.
senator.
his, their.
valor, virtue.

Pronounce; translate; analyze;1 parse.

1. Pŏpŭlus Caesărĕm² consŭlĕm² creāvit. 2. Ancum Marcium rēgĕm pŏpŭlus creāvit. 3. Nunciat Ancum Marcium rēgĕm pŏpŭlus³ creāvisse.⁴ 4. Pŏpŭlus Rōmānus sĕnātōrēs pătrēs appellat. 5. Rōmāni suam⁵ urbĕm Rōmam appellāvērunt. 6. Dumnŏrix, frātĕr⁶ Divitiăci,⁻ regnum in sua⁵ cīvĭtātĕ occŭpāvit. 7. Helvētii cum proximis cīvĭtātĭbŭs pācĕm et ămīcĭtiam confirmant. 8. Caesăr oppĭdum virtūtĕ suōrum mīlĭtŭm expugnāvit. 9. Ex oppĭdo Gĕnāvā⁶ pons¹¹¹ ad Helvētios pertĭnet (extends). 10. Aquītāniā ā Garumnā⁰ flūmĭnĕ ad Pyrēnaeos⁰ montes pertĭnet. 11. Lēgātiōnis princĭpĕm Dumnorĭgĕm creāvērunt. 12. Belgae et Galli linguā¹⁰ et lēgǐbūs¹⁰ diffĕrunt (differ). 13. Post mortĕm Caesărĭs.

Write in Latin.

1. After the death of Dumnorix. 2. After the death of his brother Divitiacus. 3. The Romans elected the man consul. 4. The Romans call their city Rome. 5. The Gauls will appoint Dumnorix chief. 6. He says that the Gauls will appoint Dumnorix chief. 7. Dumnorix will seize the royal power in his state. 8. We shall take the town by means of the soldiers' valor.8

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIII., NOTE 1.

² See 58 and Examples.

8 See 53.

4 See Ln. XVII., Note 3.

⁵ When suns refers to a noun in the Plural, as in sentence 5 it refers to Romani, render it their: when it refers to a noun in the Singular, as in sentence 6 it refers to Dumnorix, render it his, her, or its. It generally refers to the subject of its clause.

6 See 25.

7 See 40.

8 See 54.

⁹ See General Vocabulary.

10 See Ln. I., Note 5.

11 pons, pontis, m. bridge.

LESSON XXII.

THIRD DECLENSION (continued).

59. A. & G. Review **44**; **45**; **46**; **47**; **48**; **49**, including all Paradigms under these references: A. & S. **105**; **106**, a, b, d, e; **107**, and the decl. already learned: B. **136**: B. & M. all the Paradigms under **88-97**, III.: G. **48-50**: H. all of **61**: C. **26** to I.—nouns.

60. Rules of Gender. A. & G. 65, a-c: A. & S. 118: B. 140: B. & M. 152; 159; 168: G. 40; 44; 47; 50; 57; 61, 1, 2: H. 99; 105; 111: C. 30.

VOCABULARY.

corpus, body. corpŏrĭs, n. crūs, crūris, n. leg. flös, flöris, m. flower. frigus, frigöris, n. cold, frost. fūnŭs. fūněris, n. funeral procession. gĕnŭs, gĕnĕrĭs, n. kind. right, law. jūs, jūris. n. mös. mōris, m. custom, manner. load, burden. ŏnŭs, ŏnĕrĭş, n. ŏpŭs, ŏpěris, n. work. scělŭs, scělěris, n. crime, guilt. tempus, temporis, n. time. vulnus, vulněris, n. wound.

Decline each noun, name its Stem, form its Nominative, and give its Rule of Gender. 1

1. Jūs² belli; jūră pŏpŭli Rōmāni. 2. Gĕnŭs proeli;³ multa gĕnĕră fūnĕrŭm. 3. Tempŏrĕ⁴ pătrŭm; tempŏră ĕt mōrēs. 4. Vulnĕră mīlĭtŭm. 5. Flōrēs pulchri.⁵ 6. Proptĕr frīgŏră. 7. In⁶ rĕlĭquum tempŭs. 8. Mōrĕ ĕt exemplō pŏpŭli Rōmāni. 9. Mīlĭtēs multă vulnĕră accēpērunt (have received). 10. Scĕlĕră virōrum sunt (are) multa. 11. Crūră ĕqui sunt magna. 12. Corpŭs vĭri est (is) parvum. 13. Gĕnĕră flōrŭm sunt multa. 14. Nullum³ ŏnŭs aliud. 15. Nulla ŏnĕră alia. 16. Onĕră multa et magna. 17. Facta⁰ măla⁵ scĕlĕră⁰ appellāmus. 18. Rex jūră et mōrēs vĭris¹⁰ dăbăt.¹¹ 19. Multa gĕnĕră frūmenti importābĭmus. 20. Dīcit Rōmānos multa gĕnĕră frūmenti importāre.¹²

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ All Exercises are to be pronounced and translated, whether the direction "pronounce; translate," is given or not.
- ² Which cases of *Neuter* nouns are alike in form? What is the Plural Ending of these cases?
 - ⁸ See 17.

- ⁴ See Ln. I., Note 5.
- ⁵ How does flores pulchri differ from pulchri flores? (Ln. VI., Note 2.)
- 6 in, for.
- ⁷ Name the adjectives with Genitive in iŭs and Dative in i. (24)
- 8 măla modifies facta.

9 See 58.

- 10 See 39.
- 11 What does the Imperfect Tense denote? (36)
- 12 See Ln. XVII.



LESSON XXIII.

THIRD DECLENSION (continued).

61. A. & G. 51, c; 52; 53, a-c; 54; 55, a-e; A. & S. 108, a, b; 109, a: B. 130; 137, a, b, 1-2, REMARK: B. & M. all of 98, I., and 99, II.; 100: G. 58-61: H. 62, 1, 2; 63, 1; 64, 1; 65, 1-3: C. I.—nouns, pp. 25-27.

VOCABULARY.

Allobroges, Allobrogum, m. the Allobroges. ănimăl, ănimālis, n. animal. collis. collis, m. hill. crěmě, ārě, āvī, ātum, burn. fīnĭs, limit; pl. territory. fīnis, m. hostis, hostis, m. and f. enemy. xignis, ignis, m. fire. măre, măris, n. sea. nāvis, nāvis, f. ship. nūbēs, nūbis, f. cloud. and. quě,1 conj. rūpis, f. rock, cliff. rūpēs, terră, ae, f. earth, land. turris, turris, f. tower.

1 que is appended to the second of the connected words: e.g. rupes turrisque, cliff and tower. Words thus appended are called enclitics.

Decline each noun, name its Stem, and form its Nominatives.

1. In nāvībūs. 2. In ¹ collě et in montě. 3. In hostium numěro. 4. Gěněra animālium multa sunt. 5. Terrā mărīquě.² 6. Viros ignī ³ crěmant. 7. Allobrogēs virum ignī crěmant. 8. Nunciat Allobrogēs ⁴ virum ignī crěmāre. 9. In turribūs et in¹ rūpĭbus. 10. In nūbĭbūs. 11. Inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum⁵ Rhodanus fluit (flows). 12. Helvētii per angustias et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suas ⁶ cōpias trāduxērant (had led across). 13. Mons Jūra fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dīvĭdit (separates).

Write in Latin.

On¹ the cliffs.
 Out of the ships.
 Through the territory of the Aedui.
 Into the territory of the Sequani.
 On the hills and mountains.
 In the number of animals.
 Men will burn the tower with fire.
 He says that men will burn the tower with fire.
 Many kinds of towers.
 The dangers of land and sea.

Notes and Questions.

1 in, on.

² A. & G. 156, α: A. & S. 562 (2): B. 330, α: G. 477; 478; 479: H. 554, I., 2: C. 183, 2.

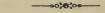
3 See 54.

4 See 53.

5 What does Allobrogum modify?

6 See LN. XXI., NOTE 5. To what noun does it refer ?

7 What is the rule of gender for măre, rūpēs, mīles, nāvīs, tempūs, honor, civitās, lēgātio? (60). See H. 100, 3, for lēgātio.

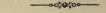


LESSON XXIV.

THE VERB SUM.

62. Learn the entire conjugation of sum. A. & G. 119: A. & S. 215: B. 71: B. & M. 277: G. 112: H. 204: C. 70.

63. What is an Irregular Verb? A. & G. 137: A. & S. 239: B. & M. 410: H. 289. What are the Stems of sum? What are the Personal Endings? What are the Principal Parts of sum? Where are the following forms made: ĕrăm, est, fuērunt, sīmus, ĕrunt, fuĕrant, estŏ, fuissĕm, fuĕrŏ?



LESSON XXV.

PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE.

64. A. & G. 176, a, b; 183; 185; 186, b: A. & S. 327-329; 334: B. 206, Rule II.: B. & M. 666: G. 202: H. 362; 438, 2: C. 111.

VOCABULARY.

Ārār, Ārārīs, acc. Ārārīm, m. Divīco, ōnis, m. extrēmus, ā, um,

Divico. furthermost.

hŏmŏ,¹ ĭnĭs, m. and f.

man.

impěrātŏr, ōrĭs, m.

commander-in-chief, general.

the Saone, pronounced Sone.

lěgio, ōnĭs, f. legion.
mŭliĕr, ĕrĭs, f. woman.
obsĕs, ĭdĭs, m. and f. hostage.
pŏtestās, ātĭs, f. power.
testĭs, ĭs, m. and f. witness.

Pronounce; translate; analyze; parse.

1. Oppĭdum est magnum.² 2. Animăl fuit parvum. 3. Pătat suam sŏrōrem esse pulchram.³ 4. Hŏmĭnēs fuērunt aegri. 5. Sēquăni sōli erunt līberi. 6. Cæsăr erăt impĕrātŏr. 7. Mălier est bŏna. 8. Dīcīt Sēquănos sōlos fătūros esse līberos. 9. Este,⁴ O puĕri, bōni. 10. Ariovistus fuĭt rex Germānōrum. 11. Divĭco dux Helvētiōrum fuĕrăt. 12. Legātiōnĭs Divĭco princeps fuĭt. 13. Extrēmum oppĭdum Allobrŏgum est Gĕnēvă. 14. Pōpĭlus⁵ Rōmānus est testĭs. 15. Erăt in Galliā lĕgio ūnă. 16. Pars cĭtrā flūmĕn Arărĭm⁶ rĕlĭquă est. 17. Flūmĕn² est Arăr quŏd (which) pĕr fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquănōrum in Rhŏdănum influĭt (flows). 18. Mons Jūră est inter Sēquănos et Helvētios. 19. Propter frīgŏra frūmenta in agris mātūra non ĕrant. 20. Aedui Sēquănis¹o obsĭdēs dĕdērunt.

Notes and Questions.

¹ homo means a human being, man or woman; vir means man, hero, never woman.

² oppidum est magnum may be rendered the town is large; it is a large town; or there is a large town: the word there as used in the last rendering has no equivalent in Latin.

³ See Ln. XVII. and Examples.

⁴ See 47.

⁵ pöpülus takes a Singular verb; people, its English equivalent, usually takes a Plural verb.

⁶ What is the rule of gender for Arar? (6)

⁷ See 64.

⁸ See 25.

⁹ Translate frümenta as if it were Singular.

¹⁰ See 39.

LESSON XXVI.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

65. A. & G. 265, a, b: A. & S. 472; 476 (2): B. & M. 1161: G. 247-249: H. 196, II., 1-4: C. 201.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Si Liscus sit dux, if Liscus should be leader; or, if Liscus be leader.
- 2. Si Liscus esset dux, if Liscus WERE leader.
- Sī Liscus fuĕrit dux, if Liscus should have been leader; or, if Liscus should be leader.
- 4. Sī Liscus fuisset dux, if Liscus had been leader.
 - 5. Sīmus ducēs, let us be leaders.

VOCABULARY.

cŭpĭdĭtās, ātis, f. desire. . leader, guide. dux, dŭcis, m. and f. Liscus. Liscus, ī, m. multĭtūdo, ĭnis, f. multitude. non, adv. not. ōrātio, ōnĭs, f. speech, oration. sī, conj. if. vectīgăl, ālis, n. tax, revenue.

Conjugate and give a synopsis 1 of each Subjunctive; parse the nouns and adjectives.

Sī² Caesar sit³ consul.⁴
 Sī Caesar esset consul.
 Sī Caesar fuĕrit consul.
 Sī Caesar fuisset consul.
 Sīmus consŭles.
 Sī frūmentum esset mātūrum.
 Sī propter frīgŏra frūmentum in agris sit nōn⁵ mātūrum.
 Sī vectīgālia fuissent magna.
 Sī vectīgālia essent parva.
 Sī Divĭco princeps lēgātiōnis fuisset.
 Sī nōn⁵ bŏnus sis.
 Sī ōrātiōnes Caesăris fuissent multae.
 Sī multĭtūdo mīlĭtum sit magna.
 Sī cŭpĭdĭtās regni esset magna.

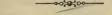
15. Sī rex fuisses. 16. Mīlites sīmus. 17. Sī mīles essem.18. Sī sis impērātor.

Write in Latin.

1. If Ariovistus should be king. 2. If Ariovistus were king. 3. If Ariovistus had been king. 4. Let us be kings. 5. Let us be good. 6. If the mountain were large. 7. If the boys had been bad. 8. If we were not free. 9. If the furthermost town had been Geneva. 10. If the corn had not been ripe. 11. If Divitiacus were leader of the Helvetii. 12. If the danger had been great.

Notes.

- ¹ A Synopsis of the Subjunctive includes the First Person Singular of each tense: e. g. sim, essem, fuërim, fuissem.
- ² si is a conditional conjunction; the sentence which it introduces is a conditional sentence.
- ³ Before translating the sentences observe carefully how each tense of the Subjunctive is rendered in the Examples.
 - 4 See 64.
- ⁵ A. & G. 207: A. & S. 74 (5): B. 30: B. & M. 460: G. 440, 1, 2: H. 551: C. 255. What does non modify?



LESSON XXVII.

COMPOUNDS OF SUM. - DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS.

66. Compounds of sum. A. & G. 137, a: A. & S. 215, d: B. 109, I., a: B. & M. 279; 411: G. 113; 114: H. 289; 290, I., III.: C. 71.

67. Dative with Compounds. A. & G. 228: A. & S. 377 (1): B. 242, Rule XXX.: B. & M. 826: G. 346: H. 386: C. 154.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Pauci¹ superfuerunt, few survived.
- 2. Dux suis militibus (67) ăděrat, the leader WAS ASSISTING his soldiers.

- Caesar provinciae (67) praefuit, Caesar RULED OVER the province.
- 4. Sī Liscus multis1 prodesset, if Liscus were useful to many.
- 5. Sī consilium dēfuisset, if counsel HAD BEEN WANTING.
- Titus legioni (67) praeerat, Titus was in command of the legion.

VOCABULARY.

ăb-sŭm,	ăb-essĕ,	ăb-fui,	be away, be absent, be distant.
ăd-sŭm,	ăd-essĕ,	ăf ² -fui,	be present, assist.
dē-sŭm,	dē-essĕ,	dē-fui,	be wanting.
hūmānĭtās,	ātis, f.		refinement, humanity.
longissĭmē,			very far.
pauci,1 ae, a	,		few.
prae-sŭm,	prae-essě,	prae-fui,	be over, rule over, be in com- mand of.
prō-sŭm,	prod-esse,	prō-fui,	be for, be useful.
sŭper-sŭm,	sŭper-essĕ;	sŭper-fui,	be over, survive.

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Multi¹ sŭperfuērunt. 2. Multi³ sŭpersŭmus. 3. Pauci sŭpĕrĕrĭmus. 4. Caesar suis mīlĭtĭbus⁴ ădĕrit. 5. Sī Caesar suis mīlĭtĭbus nōn adsit.⁵ 6. Consul urbi pracĕrat. 7. Lăbiēnus oppĭdo⁶ Gĕnāvae² pracĕrit. 8. Consul lĕgiōni pracest. 9. Sī Caesar multis¹ prōfuisset. 10. Multis prōsīmus.⁶ 11. Nōn deest consĭlium. 12. Consŭles⁶ dēsŭmus. 13. Belgae a hūmānĭtāte prōvinciae¹l longissĭme¹l absunt. 14. Sī deus¹² adsit.

Write in Latin.

1. Many will survive. 2. Few (of us) survive. 3. The consul will assist his soldiers. 4. If the consul should not assist his soldiers. 5. Let us assist the soldiers. 6. Labiënus was in command of the legion. 7. If Labiënus were in command of the legion. 8. If we consuls had been wanting.

Notes.

1 pauci and multi, like the corresponding English words few and many, are often used substantively, i. e. as nouns. Parse them, however, as adjectives modifying either the omitted subject of the verb, as in Example 1, or its omitted object, as in Example 4. Pauci is rarely used in the Singular.

- 2 Observe that in ad-sum the d of ad becomes f before f.
- e multi modifies nos (we), the omitted subject of supersumus; render, many of us survive.
 - 4 See 67 and Example 2; translate as if it were an Accusative.
 - ⁵ See Ln. XXVI., EXAMPLE 1.

6 See 67.

7 See 25.

- 8 See Ln. XXVI., EXAMPLE 5.
- ⁹ consules is an appositive to nos (we), the omitted subject of desumus. 10 See 40.
 - 11 See Ln. XXVI., Note 5.

12 See 20.

18 See Ln. XXVI., EXAMPLE 2.



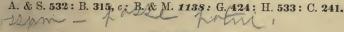
LESSON XXVIII.



CONJUGATION OF POSSUM. - USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

68. Possum. A. & G. 137, b: A. & S. 216: B. 109, I., b: B. & M. 412: G. 115: H. 290, II., including fine print: C. 72.

69. Infinitive without Subject Accusative. A. & G. 271:



- 1. Milites pugnare (69) possunt, the soldiers ARE ABLE to fight; or the soldiers CAN fight.
- 2. Milites pugnare poterant, the soldiers were able to fight; or the soldiers COULD fight.
- 3. Milites pugnare poterunt, the soldiers WILL BE ABLE to fight.
- 4. Mīlites pugnāre potuērunt, the soldiers have been able to fight; or the soldiers COULD HAVE fought.
- 5. Sī mīlites pugnāre possint, if the soldiers should be able to fight.
- 6. Sī mīlites pugnāre possent, if the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight.

- 7. Si milites pugnare potuissent, if the soldiers had been able to fight.
- 8. Dīcīt mīlītes (53) pugnāre (69) potuisse (52), he says that the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight.

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each form of POSSUM; parse the Infinitives.

1. Consul oppidum expugnāre pötest.³ 2. Consul oppidum expugnāre pöterāt. 3. Consul oppidum expugnāre pöterāt.
4. Consul oppidum expugnāre pötuit. 5. Dīcit consulem⁴ oppidum expugnāre pötuissē.⁵ 6. Sī consul oppidum expugnāre possēt. 7. Sī consul oppidum expugnāre possēt. 8. Sī consul oppidum expugnāre potuissēt. 9. Populus Rōmānus Cassium⁶ consulem⁶ creāre non poterīt. 10. Tīto ⁷ fīliam meam (my) in mātrīmōnium dăre non possūm. 11. Consuli⁸ adessē poterīs. 12. Mīlītes agros hostium vastāre poterunt. 13. Amīcis prōdessē possūmūs. 14. Nēmo (no one) sīne virtūte bonus essē potest.

Notes and Questions.

- 1 See Ln. XIV., Note 1 and Ln. XXVI., Note 1.
- ² See Ln. XVII., Note 3.
- * Observe carefully how each tense of possum is translated in the Examples. What two words unite to form possum? Which part of potis is used? What does the final t become before s? What becomes of f in the Perfect Tenses?

4 See 53.

5 See 52.

⁶ See 58. ⁷ See 39.

8 See 67.

LESSON XXIX.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF AMO.

70. Learn the Subjunctive Active of amo. A. & G. 118, ACTIVE VOICE, for the Verb-Endings of the Subjunctive; 128:

A. & S. 213 (1); 222; 224, 4, b: B. 72; 74, a; 75: B. & M. 282: G. 119; 120: H. 205; 243; 245: C. p. 104; pp. 76, 77.

Observe that the Stems and Personal Endings are the same as those of the Indicative.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Sī urbem occupēmus, if WE SHOULD OCCUPY the city.
- 2. Sī urbem occupārēmus, if WE OCCUPIED the city.
- 3. Sī urbem occupāvěrimus, if WE SHOULD HAVE OCCUPIED the city; or if WE SHOULD OCCUPY the city.
- 4. Sī urbem occupāvissēmus, if WE HAD OCCUPIED the city.
- 5. Ut1 urbem occupemus, that WE MAY OCCUPY the city.
- 6. Ut urbem occuparemus, that WE MIGHT OCCUPY the city.
- 7. Urbem occupemus, Let us occupy the city.

Conjugate, analyze, and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Sī Sēquăni Helvētios jŭvent.² 2. Sī Rōmāni Germānos jŭvārent. 3. Sī rex Helvētios jūvěrit. 4. Sī Aquītāni Sēquănos jūvissent. 5. Ut¹ consul Helvētios jŭvet. 6. Ut păter suos fīlios jŭvāret. 7. Allobrŏges jŭvēmus. 8. Pueros vŏcēmus. 9. Coneĭlium Gallōrum convŏcēmus. 10. Sī Caesări³ fīliam suam in mātrĭmōnium det. 11. Sī cum proximis cīvĭtātībus⁴ pācem et ămīcĭtiam confirmes. 12. Ut mīlĭtes circum Rōmam hiĕmārent. 13. Ut pŏpūlus Ariovistum⁵ rēgem⁵ creāret. 14. Ut consul oppĭdum Gĕnāvam⁶ occūpāret. 15. Ut mīlĭtes Rōmāni agros Gallōrum vastent. 16. Ut suis cōpiis⁻ regna concĭliāret.

Write in Latin.

1. If we should love (our) friends. 2. If we loved (our) friends. 3. If we had loved (our) friends. 4. That we may harass the enemy. 5. That we might harass the enemy. 6. Let us love friends. 7. If you should import ripe corn. 8. If you had imported ripe corn. 9. Let us aid the boys. 10. Let us elect the man⁵ senator. 5

Notes and Questions.

1 ut in this Lesson is a final conjunction and is equivalent to that, in order that.

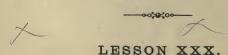
² Imitate the Examples in translating the different tenses of the Subjunctive Mood. Define the Subjunctive Mood (65). Define the Indicative Mood (26). What tenses has the Subjunctive? The Indicative? Name the three Stems of jūvo.

8 See 39.

4 See 16. Name the prepositions which are used with the Ablative.

⁵ See 58. ⁶ See 25.

7 suis copiis, with his troops. See 54.



REVIEW OF AMO. — TWO ACCUSATIVES.

Review the entire Active Voice of ămo.

71. Two Accusatives. A. & G. 239, c, Rem.: A. & S. 394 (2): B. 217, Rule IX.: B. & M. 734: G. 333: H. 374: C. 127.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Caesărem sententiam rogāvit, he asked Caesar (his) opinion.
- Caesar Aeduos frümentum flägĭtāvit, Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.
- 3. Rex pŏpŭlum sermōnem cēlāvit, the king concealed the conversation from the people.

VOCABULARY.

conceal. cēlŏ, ārĕ. āvī, ātŭm, commeŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātum, go back and forth. ātŭm, await, expect. exspectő, ārĕ, āvī, demand. flāgĭtŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, severely. grăvitěr, adv. trader, merchant. mercātŏr, ōris, m. mĭnĭmē, adv. least, by no means. ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, rŏgŏ, ask.

saepě, adv. sententiă, ae, f. sermo, ōnis, m. vulněrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, often.
opinion.
discourse, conversation.
wound.

Analyze¹ and parse.

1. Lăbiēnus suos² mīlĭtes³ exspectābat.⁴ 2. Galli mercātōres exspectāvēre.⁵ 3. Tĭtus nunciat Gallos mercātōres exspectāvisse.⁶ 4. Mīlĭtes Sēquănos grăvĭter vulnĕrāvērunt. 5. Caesar princĭpes Aeduōrum grăvĭter accūsat. 6. Dīcit Caesărem princĭpes Aeduōrum grăvĭter accūsāre. 7. Mercātōres ad³ Belgas commeant. 8. Mercātōres ăd Belgas nōn saepe commeant. 9. Mĭnĭme³ ăd Belgas mercātōres saepe commeant. 10. Commeāte,³ mercātōres, ăd Belgas. 11. Consul Germānos cōpias flāgĭtābit. 12. Consul Gallos frūmentum flāgĭtat. 13. Sī consul Aeduos cōpias flāgĭtet. 14. Caesar consŭlem sententiam rŏgābit. 15. Dīcit Caesărem consŭlem sententiam rŏgātūrum essē. 16. Tĭtum sermōnem nōn cēlābo. 17. Sī Ariovistum sermōnem cēlāvissem. 18. Ut rēgem sermōnem cēlārem. 19. Aeduos frūmentum flāgĭtēmus.¹0

Notes and Questions.

¹ See Ln. XIII., Note 1.

² See Ln. VI., Note 1.

⁸ See Ln. IV., Note 1.

⁴ See Ln. XVIII., Note 3.

⁵ What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative? (43)

⁶ See Ln. XVII., Examples, Notes on the Examples, and Note 3.

7 ad — commeant, go-back-and-forth to, may be rendered visit.
 8 minime modifies saepe.

9 See 47.

¹⁰ See Ln. XXIX., Example 7.

What Stems has each verb and how are they found? Which tenses denote incomplete and which completed action? What are the Personal Endings of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, Active Voice? Of the Imperative? What are the Endings of the Infinitives? Of the Participles? Which tenses of the Indicative are formed upon the Present Stem? Which of the Subjunctive? Which of each are formed upon the Perfect Stem?



LESSON XXXI.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO.

72. Definition and Personal Endings of the Passive Voice.

A. & G. 111; 116; 118: A. & S. 193; 213 (1): B. 44; 64, a,

Passive: B. & M. 262, 2; 333, Passive Voice: G. 205; 111:

H. 195, II.; 247, Person, Pass., Meaning: C. 64; p. 103.

73. Learn the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of ămŏ. A. & G. 129: A. & S. 223: B. 74, b: B. & M. 283: G. 121: H. 206: C. p. 78.

a. Observe that the Active and Passive Voices of these three tenses differ in form only in the Personal Endings: e. g. ămā-mus, we love; ămā-mur, we are loved: ămābǐ-tǐs, you will love; ămābǐ-mīnī, you will be loved. The only exception is the Second Person Singular of the Future, which, in the Active Voice, has bǐ, and in the Passive, bě: e. g. ămā-bǐ-s, you will love; ămā-bě-rīs or rĕ, you will be loved. It is a good practice to write both the Active and Passive Voices side by side on the blackboard, and compare them with each other.

VOCABULARY.

appellŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm, Castĭcŭs, ī, m. nostĕr, nostrǎ, nostrǔm, occultŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm,

name, call.
Casticus.
our.
hide, conceal.

Conjugate the verbs; name their elements; 1 parse the nouns.

1. Oppĭda expugnābuntŭr. 2. Nostri agri vastābuntŭr. 3. Hŏmo igni² crĕmābĭtŭr. 4. Concĭlium Gallōrum convŏcābātŭr. 5. Nostrā linguā³ Galli⁴ appellantŭr. 6. Ariovistus rex⁴ atque amīcus appellābātŭr. 7. Lucius Cassius consul⁵ ămīcus⁴ appellābĭtŭr. 8. Rex⁴ appellābĕrĭs. 9. Divitiăcus frāter⁵ Dumnŏrĭgis ămīcus⁴ pŏpŭli Rōmāni appellābātŭr. 10. Păter Castĭci pŏpŭli Rōmāni amīcus appellābātŭr. 11. In tantā multĭtūdĭne fŭga occultātŭr. 12. Orātiōne ⁶ Lisci Dumnŏrix Divitiăci frāter dēsignātŭr. 13. Dumnŏrix ab Aeduis⁶ accūsābātŭr. 14. A Caesăre ⁶ accūsābĭmĭnī.

Write in Latin.

1. The town will be stormed. 2. Our field will be laid waste. 3. The men will be burned with fire. 4. (In) our language they are called Sequani. 5. They will be called kings. 6. He was called a friend of the Roman people. 7. In so great a multitude our flight will be concealed. 8. The brothers of Dumnorix were accused by the Gauls. 9. Dumnorix is described by Caesar's speech.

Notes.

1 See Ln. X., Note 4, and Ln. XII., Note 1.

² See 54 and Ln. I., Note 5.

6 With verbs in the Passive Voice the agent, i. e. the person by whom anything is done, is expressed by the Ablative with ā, āb; the instrument, i. e. the thing by means of which or with which anything is done, by the Ablative without a preposition: e. g. He is overcome by the soldier's weapons, têlis militis supërātur.

LESSON XXXII.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (continued).

74. Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive of **ămŏ.** A. & G. 118; 129: A. & S. 211; 214; 223: B. **76:** B. & M. **281**, 6, 4; **283:** G. 122: H. **206:** C. p. **79.**

VOCABULARY.

arx, arcis, f.
comportŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,
ēnunciŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,
ĕquĕs, ĭtīs, m.
praetŏr, ōrīs, m.

citadel.
collect.
divulge, report.
horseman, cavalryman.
praetor.

Conjugate and give a Synopsis¹ of each verb in the Indicative Passive; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Frūmentum ab Aeduis² comportātum³ est. 2. Magna cōpia frūmenti ab Aeduis comportātă ĕrat. 3. Obsĭdes Helvētiis⁴ dăti³ ĕrant. 4. Multi obsĭdes Helvētiis ā Sēquănis dăti ĕrant. 5. Nullae⁵ arces expugnātae³ sunt. 6. Nostra consĭlia hostĭbus⁴ ēnunciāta³ sunt. 7. Nostra consĭlia hostĭbus ab Aeduis ēnunciāta ĕrant. 8. Caesar ā Rōmānis praetor⁶ creātus³ est. 9. Praetōres⁶ creāti ĕrĭmus. 10. Nostri agri vastāti sunt. 11. Nostra oppĭda expugnāta sunt. 12. Tantā multĭtūdo ĕquĭtum supĕrāta³ est. 13. In tantā multĭtūdine ĕquĭtum nostra fuga occultata est. 14. Cōpiae Caesaris ab Germānis ūno proelio⁵ supĕrātae sunt. 15. Equĭtes ā Caesare gravĭter³ accūsāti sunt.

Write in Latin.

1. An abundance of corn has been collected. 2. The citadels will have been stormed. 3. The citadels had been stormed by the Romans.² 4. Caesar's plans have been reported to the Gauls⁴ by the Germans. 5. Cassius had been elected practor.⁶ 6. A large multitude of cavalrymen has been overcome. 7. The troops of Cassius had been overcome in a single battle.⁷ 8. The troops of Cassius have been overcome by the Germans. 9. We have been severely censured by the consul.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See Ln. XIV., Note 1. ² See Ln. XXXI., Note 6.

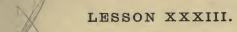
³ Observe that the Participle, like the predicate adjective (64), agrees with the subject of the verb in *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

⁴ See 39. ⁵ See 24.

⁶ See 64. What was a practor? (See Gen. Vy.) What was a consul? How often were these officers elected?

⁷ uno proelio, in a single battle. See 54.

⁸ See Ln. XXVI., NOTE 5.



VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (continued).

75. Learn the Imperative, Infinitives, and Participles of the Passive Voice of ămö. A. & G. 116, b; 118; 129: A. & S. 223, page 114: B. 64, b; 65; 66; 74, b; 76: B. & M. 283: G. 121; 122: H. 247, 3; 248; 206: C. pp. 79, 80.

Conjugate the Imperatives; name the Stem and Ending of each verb; parse the Infinitives and Nouns.

1. Accūsārē, accūsāmĭnī.¹ 2. Accūsātŏr, accūsantŏr. 3. Jŭvārē, jūvātŏr. 4. Vŏcāmĭnī, vŏcantŏr. 5. Dīcit suum frātrem creātŭm essĕ.² 6. Dīcit frātrem Divitiāci dēsignātŭm essĕ. 7. Dīcit montem ā Lābiēno occŭpārī. 8. Nĕgăt³ nostrōs agrōs vastātōs essĕ. 9. Nĕgăt cŭm proximis cīvĭtātībus pācem confirmātăm essĕ. 10. Dīcit regnum ĭn cīvĭtāte suā occŭpātŭm essĕ. 11. Nunciāt Caesărem creātŭm essĕ consŭlem. 12. Nunciāt Cassium praetōrem creātŭm essĕ. 13. Dīcit Ariovistum ā Rōmānis rēgem appellātum essĕ.

Notes and Questions.

1 How is the Imperative used? (47)

² creātum essē, has been elected, or was elected. See LN. XVII., References to the Grammar, Examples, and Notes on the Examples.

3 negăt, he says not; lit. he denies: HE SAYS our fields have NOT been laid waste.

Upon which Stem are the different tenses of the Indicative Active formed? Of the Indicative Passive? The Imperative Active and Passive? The Infinitives Active and Passive? The Participles Active and Passive?

How many Participles has a transitive verb? A. & G. 109, α: A. & S. 206: B. 54; 55: B. & M. 269: H. 200, IV., Note: C. 65, 4.

LESSON XXXIV.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (continued).

76. Learn the Subjunctive Passive of ămő. A. & G. 129: A. & S. 223: B. 74, b; 76: B. & M. 283: G. 121; 122: H. 206: C. pp. 78, 79.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Sī homo cremētur, if the man should be burned.
- 2. Sī homo cremārētur, if the man were being burned.
- 3. Sī homo cremātus sit, if the man should have been burned; or if the man should be burned.
- Sī hŏmo crĕmātŭs essĕt, if the man had been burned; or if the man were burned.
 - 5. Sī sententiam rogētur, if he should be asked (his) opinion.

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Sī Caesar sententiam¹ rŏgātŭs essět. 2. Sī sententiam rŏgātŭs sĭm. 3. Si sententiam rŏgārērĭs. 4. Sī crĕmātī essēmŭs. 5. Sī Ariovistus rex² creātŭs essět. 6. Sī mīles vulnĕrētŭr. 7. Sī non vulnĕrātŭs essēs. 8. Sī Ariovistus amīcus pŏpŭli Rōmāni appellārētŭr. 9. Sī obsĭdes Rōmānis³ ā Gallis⁴ nōn dentŭr. 10. Sī obsĭdes Germānis ăb Helvētiis nōn dătī essent. 11. Sī cōpia frūmenti importētŭr. 12. Sī cōpia frūmenti nōn importātă essět. 13. Sī Divitiăcus ā pŏpŭlo Rōmāno rex appellātūs essět. 14. Sī rex atque ămīcus ā Helvētiis appellārērĭs. 15. Sī sententiam rŏgātī essēmus. 16. Sī sententiam rŏgātī sītĭs. 17. Sī rēges creātī essētĭs. 18. Sī consŭles creātī essēmŭs.

Write in Latin.

1. If I should be asked (my) opinion. 2. If you were asked (your) opinion. 3. If you had been burned. 4. If Cassius had been elected consul. 5. If Cassius had not been called a friend of the Gauls. 6. If hostages should be given

to the Germans by the consul. 7. If the soldiers had not been wounded. 8. If we had not been wounded. 9. If an abundance of corn were being imported. 10. If you should be elected consul.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 71.

² See 64.

⁸ See 39.

* Which prepositions are used with the Ablative? (16) How is the agent of a verb in the Passive Voice expressed in Latin? (Ln. XXXI., Note 6.) How is the instrument expressed? What is meant by the agent? By the instrument?

LESSON XXXV.

DEPONENT VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

77. Definition. A. & G. 135 A. & S. 195: B. 46: B. & M. 304: G. 211: H. 195, II. 2: C. 79.

78. Learn the entire Deponent Verb of the First Conjugation. A. & G. page 106, miror: A. & S. 223, miror: B. 93, conor; 55, second sentence: B. & M. 306, second part; 307; G. 141; 142: H. 231; 232: C. p. 99.

VOCABULARY.

ārī, ātŭs sŭm,1 attempt, try. conor, ārī, ātŭs sum, glörior, glory, boast. exhort, urge. hortor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm, laetor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm. rejoice, exult. ārī, ātŭs sum, admire, wonder at. miror, ārī, ātŭs sŭm, tarry, delay. moror. wander about. ātŭs sŭm, văgor, ārī. ravage, lay waste. ātŭs sŭm, pŏpŭlor, ārī,

¹ The principal parts of a deponent verb are the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative; e. g. conor, conari, conatus sum.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis 1 of each verb.

Conāmur, conābāmur, conābimur.
 Gloriātus sum, gloriātus ero.
 Sī hortētur, sī hortāretur.
 Sī hortātus sis, sī hortātus esses.
 Laetāme, laetāmini, laetēmur.
 6. Dīcit Caesarem laetātum esse.
 Mirāri³ non possumus.
 Vagāri³ conēmur.
 9. Vagāri non poterimus.
 10. Caesar ad⁴ Romam morātus est.
 11. Helvētii agros Aeduorum populābantur.
 12. Ut vagārentur.

Write in Latin.

1. You are exhorting, you were exhorting, you will exhort.
2. You tarried in the vicinity of Rome; you had tarried; you will have tarried.
3. If he should tarry, if he tarried.
4. If he had tarried near Rome.
5. Let us tarry in the vicinity of Geneva.
6. They can⁶ not rejoice.
7. They could⁶ not rejoice.
8. Let us try² to rejoice.

Notes.

- ¹ A complete Synopsis of conor, for example, is as follows: Indicative, conor, conābar, conābor, conātus sum, conātus eram, conātus ero; Subjunctive, coner, conārer, conātus sim, conātus essem; Imperative, conāre, conātor; Infinitives, conāri, conātus esse, conātūrus esse; Participles, conans, conandus, conātus, conātūrus; Gerund, conandi; Supines, conātum, conātu.
 - ² See Ln. XXIX., Example 7. ⁸ See 69.
- 4 ăd with the name of a town may often be rendered near, in the vicinity of.
 - ⁵ Render by the Imperfect Indicative.
- ⁶ Can and could in these and similar sentences are equivalent to are able, were able; translate them, therefore, by the proper tense of the Indicative of possum, and the principal verb by the Present Infinitive.

LESSON XXXVI.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. - COMPLEX AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

- 79. Ablative of Cause. A. & G. 245: A. & S. 404: B. 257, RULE XLII.: B. & M. 873: G. 407: H. 413; 416: C. 166.
- 80. Complex and Compound Sentences. A. & G. 180, a-f: A. & S. 311-314, a: B. 288, a-f: B. & M. 1407-1409; 1411: G. 474, 1-4: H. 348; 349: C. 107, 2, 3.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Pueri equis (79) laetantur, boys rejoice IN HORSES.
- 2. Helvētii suā victōriā¹ (79) glōriābantur, the Helvetii were boasting BECAUSE OF their VICTORY; or the Helvetii were glorying IN their VICTORY.
- 3. Orgetŏrix Castĭcum hortātur ŭt regnum occŭpet,² Orgetorix urges Casticus to seize the royal power.
- Mîles non laetētur, sī vulnerētur,³ the soldier would not rejoice, if he should be wounded.
- 5. Sī multi vulněrāti essent, non laetāti essēmus, if many had been wounded, we should not have rejoiced.
- 6. Ariovistus fuit rex et Caesar fuit consul, 4 Ariovistus was king and Caesar was consul.

Analyze the sentences and parse.

1. Impěrātor mīlitíbus bŏnis laetātur. 2. Rōmāni suā victōriā nōn glōriābantur. 3, Sēquăni victōriā suā nōn glōriābuntur. 4. Něgat 5 Sēquănos victōriā glōriātūros essě. 5. Mīlites hortābimur út agros pŏpŭlentur. 6. Impěrātor mīlites suos hortātus est 6 út agros Gallōrum pŏpŭlentur. 7. Dumnŏrigem hortābor út regnum ĭn 7 suā cīvitāte occŭpet. 8. Sī igni 8 cremer, nōn laetēris. 9. Sī Cassius praetor 9 creātus esset, laetātus essem. 10. Sī Caesar sermōnem 10 mīlites 10 cēlet, laeter. 11. Sī dux mīlitibus 11 adesse 12 possit, laetentur. 12. Hortēmur 13 Helvētios út cum proximis cīvitātibus pācem

ět ămīcĭtiam confirment. 13. Sī Caesar multos obsĭdes dĕdisset hostĭbus,¹⁴ hostes laetāti essent. 14. Puer ĕrat mălus ĕt puella ĕrat bŏna. 15. Consul ăbest ĕt praetor est aeger.⁹

Notes.

- ¹ In Examples 1 and 2 equis and victoria are the cause of the rejoicing and boasting, and hence are in the Ablative in accordance with the rule referred to in 79.
- ² Example 3 is a complex sentence, because it is made up of a principal clause, Orgetŏrix Castĭcum hortātur, and a subordinate clause, ut regnum occŭpet. Observe that ut occŭpet is rendered by the Infinitive to seize; lit. that he may seize.
- ³ Example 4 is a complex sentence; principal clause, miles non laetētur; subordinate clause, sī vulnērētur: sī and ŭt are subordinate conjunctions; hence the clauses which they introduce are subordinate clauses.
- ⁴ Example 6 is a compound sentence, because it is made up of clauses which are independent of each other. Such clauses are called coördinate clauses; and the conjunctions which connect them, coördinate conjunctions.
 - ⁵ See Ln. XXXIII., Note 3.
- 6 hortātus est, has urged.
- ⁷ See Ln. XIII., Note 5. Which is this?
 - 9 See 64.

8 See 54.

11 See 67.

10 See 71.

18 See Ln. XXIX., Ex. 7.

¹² See **69**. ¹⁴ See **39**.



LESSON XXXVII.

ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION.

81. A. & G. 84, lěvis, ācěr, b, Case-Forms: A. & S. 148-150; 152; 155 (1), (2): B. 156; 157, lěvis: B. & M. 193, Rules 1, 2; 196, II., mītis; 198, ācěr: G. 81; 82: H. 152; 153; 154, tristis: C. 42; 43.

VOCABULARY.

ălăcĕr,¹ crĭs, crĕ, lively, eager.

brĕvĭs,² ĕ, short, brief.

cĕlĕr,¹ cĕlĕrĭs, cĕlĕrĕ, swift.

difficilis,² ĕ,
ĕquestĕr,¹ trĭs, trĕ,
făcĭlis,² ĕ,
fămĭliä, ae, f.
Afortis,² ĕ,
itĕr, ĭtĭnĕrĭs, n.
jūdĭciŭm, ī, n.
omnĭs,² ĕ,
tristīs,² ĕ,

difficult, impracticable.
of cavalry.
easy, practicable.
household, family.
brave, courageous, strong.
journey, route, march.
trial.
all, every.
sad.

1 Declined like ācer.

Analyze and parse.

1. Ex omnī¹ Galliā. 2. Cŭm omnĭbŭs cōpiīs. 3. Pĕr omnēs urbēs. 4. Pĕr tōtăm² urbĕm. 5. Equī sunt cĕlĕrēs.³ 6. Nĕgăt⁴ ĕquōs essĕ cĕlĕrēs. 7. Sī ĕquĭtēs fuissent cĕlĕrēs, rex laetātŭs essĕt.⁵ 8. Tempūs est brĕvĕ. 9. Helvētiī oppĭdă suă omniă incendunt (burn). 10. Fuĭt proeliŭm ĕquestrĕ. 11. Dīcĭt fŭtūrūm essĕ proeliŭm ĕquestrĕ. 12. Sēquānī fuērunt tristes. 13. Itĕr¹² ĕrăt diffĭcĭlĕ. 14. Sī ĭtĕr sĭt făcĭlĕ, laetĕr.⁶ 15. Pŭtŏ ĭtĕr essĕ fācĭlĕ. 16. Tĭtūs Lābiēnūs lēgātūs² suōs mīlĭtēs hortātŭr ŭt³ fortēs sint.⁵ 17. Orgētŏrix ăd jūdĭciŭm omnĕm suăm fămĭliam coēgĭt (brought). 18. Orgētŏrix Helvētiōs hortātŭs est¹³ ŭt¹⁰ dē fīnĭbūs suīs cŭm omnĭbūs cōpiīs exīrent.¹⁰ 19. Vĭrīs¹¹ fortĭbūs laetŏr.

Notes.

² Declined like levis, mitis, făcilis, tristis.

¹ See LN. VI., NOTE 1.

² See 24.

⁸ See 64.

⁴ Se Ln. XXXIII., Note 3.

⁵ See Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 5.

⁶ See Ln. XXVI., Ex. 1 and Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 4.

⁷ See 25.

⁹ See Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

¹⁰ ŭt-exirent, to go out. 11 See 79.

¹² See A. & G. **60**, c: A. & S. **110** (4): B. **138**: B. & M. **104**: C. **29**, 10, exc. 2.

¹⁸ hortatus est: urged.

LESSON XXXVIII.

ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION (continued).

82. A. & G. 85, a, b; 87, a, c: A. & S. 154; 155 (3): B. all of 158: B. & M. all of 193: G. 83; 84; 85, 1-3: H. all of 155-158; C. 45.

VOCABULARY.

audax, ācis, bold, audacious. conditio, onis, f. condition. contumeliă, ae, f. insult. dīvěs, ĭtĭs, rich. fēlix, īcis, happy. flens, entis, weeping. implörő, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, beseech, implore. injūriă, ae, f. injury. mŭliër, ĕrĭs, f. woman. ŏriens, entis, rising. pār, păris, equal. princeps, ĭpĭs, first, chief. rěcens, entis, recent. sõl, sõlĭs, m. sun. spectő, ārě, āvī, ātŭm, look, front. old, ancient. větůs, ěris,

Analyze and parse.

1. Větěrēs causae. 2. Větůs urbs¹ est Rōmă. 3. Měmŏriă větěris contůmēliae. 4. In¹ părém condĭtiōněm servitūtis. 5. Rěcentiům injūriārům měmŏriă. 6. Můliěrēs ěrant fēlīcēs. 7. Můliěrēs flentēs Caesărěm implōrābant. 8. Helvētiī flentes pācěm pětiērunt (sought). 9. Hortēmůr² mīlĭtēs ŭt³ ălacrēs et audācēs sint.³ 10. Belgae spectant ĭn⁴ ŏrientěm sōlěm.⁵ 11. Lēgātiōnĭs princĭpěm⁶ lŏcům⁵ obtĭnēbant (they held). 12. Rōmānī dīvǐtēs fuērunt. 13. Germānī nōn părēs sunt nostrīs mīlĭtĭbůs.³

Write in Latin.

1. There will be a battle of cavalry. 2. Our soldiers are brave. 3. Let us exhort our soldiers to be brave. 4. Geneva is an old town. 5. All are not happy. 6. Our leaders will be bold. 7. All cannot be 11 rich. 8. Weeping women will implore the consul. 9. Gauls are not equal to our cavalrymen.

Notes.

- ¹ See **64.** ² See Ln. XXIX., Ex. 7.
- ⁸ How is the Subjunctive with ut to be translated after verbs signifying ask, command, exhort, persuade, please, strive, urge? Answ. By the Present Infinitive. See Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 3.
 - 4 in, towards.
 - ⁵ See B. 135: B. & M. 121: H. 60: C. 37, 5.
 - ⁶ princĭpĕm is here used as an adjective; it is often a noun.
- 7 How is locus declined in the Plural? See Vy., LN. VIII.
 - 8 militibus is a Dative. 9 See Ln. XXV., Note 2, last part.
- 10 omnes, like the English all, is often used substantively.
- 11 cannot be, esse non possunt.



LESSON XXXIX.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

83. A. & G. 89, a: A. & S. 163-166: B. 161; 162; 163, a: B. & M. 214-218: G. 86; 88, 1: H. 160-162; 163, 1: C. 47; 48.

84. Declension of Comparatives. A. & G. 86, α: A. & S. 152, mītior: B. 157, Remark: B. & M. 197: G. 87: H. 154, Note 1: C. 44.

VOCABULARY.

altűs, ă, ŭm, high, deep.
fortűnă, ae, f. fortune.
grăvis, ĕ, heavy, grievous.
lātűs, ă, ŭm, broad, wide.

longē, adv. misēr, misērā, misērūm, nōbilis, ē, potens, entis, quām, adv. ūtilis, ē, by far.
wretched, pitiable.
well-known, noble.
powerful.
than.
useful.

Compare and decline the adjectives.

1. Jūră est mons¹ altissĭmŭs.² 2. Caesăr dīcīt Jūrăm essĕ montĕm altissĭmŭm. 3. Rhēnŭs est flūmĕn lātissĭmŭm ĕt altissĭmūm. 4. Hŏmĭnī³ nōbĭlissĭmō āc⁶ pŏtentissĭmō ădĕrăm. 5. Omniŭm⁴ fortissĭmī sunt Belgae. 6. Apūd Helvētiōs longē nōbĭlissĭmŭs ĕt ditissĭmŭs¹⁰ fuĭt Orgētŏrix. 7. Pĕr trēs (three) pŏtentissĭmōs pŏpūlōs tōtīŭs Galliae. 8. Nostrae fīliae pulcherrĭmae sunt. 9. Mīlĭtēs hortēmŭr ŭt fortiōrēs sint.⁵ 10. Sī tempŭs fuissĕt brĕviŭs, nōn laetātŭs essĕm. 11. Mīlǐtēs fuērunt Caesărī ūtĭlissĭmī. 12. Dīcĭt essĕ mĭsĕriōrĕm grāviōremquĕ fortūnăm³ Sēquănōrūm quăm³ rĕlĭquōrūm Gallōrĭm.

Write in Latin.

1. The bravest soldiers. 2. The most beautiful women.
3. The broadest rivers. 4. The highest mountains. 5. Divitiacus was the noblest of all. 6. Friends are most useful to a man. 7. Caesar says (that) the Rhine is a very deep river.
8. The fortune of the Gauls was more grievous than (that) of the Germans. 9. Let us urge the boys to be very brave.

Notes.

¹ What is the gender of mons? Of Jūră?

² Superlatives may sometimes be rendered by the positive with very: e. g. mons altissimus, a very high mountain. They are adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

^{67.}

⁴ See Ln. XXXVIII., Note 10.

⁵ See Ln. XXXVIII., Note 3. ⁶ See Ln. XX., Note 1.

What is the difference in force of et, que, and atque? See Ln. XXIII.,

NOTE 2. What are appended words called? See Vy., Ln. XXIII., NOTE on que, last part.

8 fortūnăm is subject of essě.

⁹ When quăm signifying than is immediately followed by a Genitive, supply in translation that: e. g. quăm Rōmānōrum, than that of the Romans.

10 See General Vocabulary under dives and dis.



LESSON XL.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (continued).

85. A. & G. 89, b-e; 90; 91, a, b: A. & S. 167-170 (1), (2); 173: B. 163, b-d; 164, a, b: B. & M. 219-222: G. 88, 2-4; 89, REMARKS 1, 2: H. 163, 2, 3; 165; 166; 169, 1, 2; 170: C. 49.

VOCABULARY.

Alpēs, iŭm, f.
citěriŏr, citěriŭs,
extrā, prep. w. acc.
infěriŏr, infěriŭs,
prīmŭs, ă, ŭm,
Sēgūsiāni, ōrŭm, m.
Sēquănŭs, ă, ŭm,
sŭpěriŏr, sŭpěriŭs,
ultěriŏr, ultěriŭs.

the Alps.
hither.
without, beyond.
lower.
first.
the Segusiani.
of the Sequani.
higher, upper.
farther.

Translate and parse.

1. Mājŏr¹ multĭtūdo Germānōrum² Rhēnum transībāt (was crossing). 2. Carrōrum² maxĭmus nŭmĕrus. 3. Cum maximo mīlĭtum² nŭmĕro. 4. Belgae pertĭnent (extend) ăd infĕriōrem partem flūmĭnis Rhēni. 5. Galli lŏca sŭpĕriōra occupant. 6. Lābiēnus summum montem³ occupāvit. 7. Summus mons ā Lābiēno⁴ occupātus est. 8. Nĕgat summum montem ā Lābiēno occupātum essĕ. 9. Mīlĭtes hortābĭmur

ut summum montem occŭpent. 10. Sī Lăbiēnus summum montem occŭpet, Caesar sit⁵ fēlīcissĭmus. 11. Iter pĕr prōvinciam est făcĭlius.⁶ 12. Ager Sēquănus ĕrat optĭmus⁷ tōtīus Galliae. 13. Caesar ĭn Galliam ultĕriōrem pĕr Alpes contendit (hastens). 14. Cĭtĕriōris prōvinciae extrēmum oppĭdum. 15. Segūsiāni sunt extrā prōvinciam prīmi.

Write in Latin.

1. A very large number of hörses. 2. A larger number of cavalrymen. 3. To the upper part of the Rhone. 4. The soldiers will occupy the top of the mountain. 5. The top of the mountain will be occupied by the soldiers. 6. The route through our province is most practicable. 7. I think (that) the route through the Alps is by far the most practicable. 8. Let us occupy the top of the mountain.

Notes.

- ¹ In parsing adjectives hereafter give their comparison, if they can be compared.
- ² Notice the different positions of the Genitive; what is the difference in force? See LN. III., NOTE 3.
 - 3 summum montem, the top of the mountain.
 - ⁴ See Ln. XXXI., Note 6. ⁵ sit, would be.
 - ⁶ Name the adjectives which form their Superlatives like făcilis.
 - 7 optimus, sc. ager.



DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

86. Dative with Adjectives. A. & G. 234: A. & S. 388: B. 245, Rule XXXIII.: B. & M. 860: G. 356: H. 391: C. 162, 1, 2.

EXAMPLES.

- Belgae sunt proximi Germānis, the Belgae are nearest to the Germans.
- 2. Castrīs idoneus locus est, the place is suitable for a CAMP.
- 3. Deō sĭmĭIĭs est, he is like A GOD.

VOCABULARY.

aetās, ātĭs, f. age. ămīcus, ă, um, friendly. commūnis, ě, common. ĭdoneŭs, ă, ŭm, fit, suitable. ĭnimīcus, ă, um, unfriendly, hostile. pătriă, ae, f. native land, fatherland. pěriculosus, a, um, dangerous. similis, ĕ, like, similar. sŏlŭm, ī, n. ground, soil.

Analyze and parse.

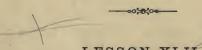
1. Aquitānī sunt proximī provinciae. 2. Aquitānī sunt propiorēs provinciae quam Italiae. 3. Genāva est oppidum proximum Helvētiorum fīnībus. 4. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiorum fīnībus Genāva. 5. Castrīs non idoneus omnis locus est. 6. Negat castrīs idoneum omnem locum esse. 7. Sī castrīs idoneus locus sit, mīlitēs laetentur. 8. Non ego sum idoneus armīs. 9. Sī ego fuissem idoneus armīs, laetātus essem. 10. Dumnorix Helvētiīs erat amīcus. 11. Dux inimīcior Dumnorigī fuit quam Caesarī. 12. Mātrī puella est similis. 13. Non omnis puer est similis patrī. 14. Omnī aetātī mors est commūnīs 15. Patriae solum omnibus cārum est. 16. Populo Romāno perīculosum est proelium. 17. Omnī urbī lēgēs sunt utīlēs. 18. Imperātor suos mīlitēs hortātur ut fortēs sint² et urbī Romae utīlēs.

Write in Latin.

1. He says (that) the Aquitani are nearest to the province.
2. Ocelum was the furthermost town of the hither province and nearest to the Alps. 3. If the place had been suitable for a camp, we should have rejoiced.³ 4. Let us urge the soldiers to be² useful to (their) fatherland. 5. The lieutenant was most friendly to the soldiers. 6. The daughter is more like (her) father than (her) mother. 7. I do⁴ not think (that) the battle will be dangerous to the city.

Notes.

- ¹ See Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 4. What kind of a sentence is this? (80)
- ² See Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 3.
- ⁸ See Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 5.
- ⁴ See Ln. X., Note 5.



LESSON XLII

ADVERBS.

- 87. Definition. A. & G. 25, f: A. & S. 74 (5): B. 30: B. & M. 460: G. 15, IV., 1: H. 303: C. 98.
- 88. Derivation. A. & G. 148, a, b: A. & S. 174, b: B. 199, b, c: B. & M. 591; 592; 595: G. 90, 1-4: H. 304, I.-IV.: C. 99, 1, 2.
- 89. Classification. A. & G. 149, α-g: B. 175, α-f, REMARK: B. & M. 461, 1-6: H. 305, NOTE 2, 1)-4): C. 99, 3.
- 90. Comparison. A. & G. 92: A. & S. 175: B. 174, α-ε: B. & M. 462; 463: G. 91: H. 306: C. 52.
- 91. Syntax. A. & G. 207: A. & S. 557: B. 327, Rule LXXIX.: B. & M. 996: G. 440, 2: H. 551: C. 255.

VOCABULARY.

ācriter, adv. sharply, fiercely. audactěr, adv. boldly, courageously. cělěritěr, adv. quickly, immediately. făcile, adv. easily, readily, bravely, valiantly. fortiter, adv. grăvitěr, adv. heavily, severely. freely, unreservedly. lībĕrē, adv. where. quā, adv.

Parse the adverbs and adjectives.

1. Belgae fortitěr¹ pugnāvērunt. 2. Sī mīlitēs fortiŭs pugnent, impěrātŏr laetētŭr. 3. Rōmānī nōn ācriŭs pugnābunt quăm Gallī.² 4. Germānī Helvētiōs făcilě³ sŭpěrābunt. 5. Gallī ā Caesărĕ nōn făcillĭmē sŭpěrātī sunt. 6. Nunciāt Gallōs ā Caesărĕ nōn făcillĭmē sŭpěrātōs essĕ. 7. Caesăr Dumnŏrĭgĕm grāvissĭmē accūsāvĭt. 8. Caesăr cĕlĕrĭtĕr concĭliŭm dīmittĭt (dismisses). 9. Liscūs dīcit lībĕriŭs⁴ atquĕ⁵ audāciŭs. 10. Quā⁶ mĭnĭmă altĭtūdo flūmĭnĭs ĕrāt. 11. Jūmentōrŭm ĕt carrōrŭm quăm³ maxĭmŭm nŭmĕrŭm coëmĕrĕ³ (to purchase). 12. Hostēs quām fortissĭmē pugnābant. 13. Helvētiī Rōmānīs⁵ quām amīcissĭmī fuērunt. 14. Sŏlŭm pătriae cīvī quām cārissĭmūm est.

Notes.

ye as possible; quam torcussime, as oravery as possible.

¹ Form for parsing an adverb. — fortiter is an adverb of manner (89); derived from the adjective fortis (88); compared fortiter, fortius, fortissime (90); of the positive degree and modifies pugnaverunt (91).

² What is the construction of Galli?

A. & G. 148, d: A. & S. 174 c: B. 174, d: B. & M. 596: G. 90,
 H. 304, I., 3, 1): C. 99, 1, a.

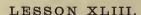
⁴ liběrê has no Superlative. ⁵ See Ln. XXIII., Note 2.

 $^{^{6}\,\}mathrm{As}$ a rule only those adverbs are compared which are derived from adjectives.

⁷ quăm modifying a Superlative strengthens it: e. g. quăm maximum, as large as possible; quăm fortissime, as bravely as possible.

³ (...) is the mark of *Diaeresis*; when placed over the second of two vowels which regularly form a diphthong, it shows that they are to be separated in pronunciation: e. g. coëmere has four syllables; coemere would have only three.

9 See 86.



VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE.

92. Learn the entire Active Voice of the Second Conjugation. A. & G. 130: A. & S. 222: B. 79; 80: B. &. M. 288: G. 123; 124: H. 207: C. 75. See 27, 28, 37, 45, 49, 50 of this book.

VOCABULARY.

mŏneŏ,¹ ērĕ, uī, ĭtǔm, advise.
hăbeŏ, ērĕ, uī, ĭtǔm, have.
prŏhibeŏ, ērĕ, uī, ĭtǔm, restrain, keep from.

¹ Most verbs of the Second Conjugation form their Perfect and Supine like moneo. For the *principal parts* let ere, ui, itum take the place of final eo: e. g. habeo, haber, habui, habitum.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis of each verb; name its elements.

1. Mönēbātĭs, mönēbĭtĭs, mönuistīs. 2. Sī möneāmŭs,² sī mönērēmŭs, sī mönuissēmūs. 3. Mönē, mönētĕ, mönentö. 4. Mönens, mönĭtūrūs. 5. Mönērē, mönuissē, mönĭtūrūs essē. 6. Ut equōs hābeāmūs.² 7. Ut rex urbēs multās et³ magnās hābeāt. 8. Multā castrā hābēbĭmūs. 9. Lēgātūs multōs mīlĭtēs hābuĕrĭt.⁴ 10. Hābētŏ, hābētōtĕ.⁵ 11. Hābens, hābĭtūrūs. 12. Hābērē, hābuissē, hābĭtūrūs essē. 13. Sī Helvētiōs ĭtĭnĕrĕ pröhĭbeant. 14. Sī Helvētiōs ĭtĭnĕrĕ pröhĭbuissent. 15. Helvētiōs ĭtĭnĕrĕ pröhĭbeāmūs.⁵ 16. Itīnĕrĕ Helvētīōs pröhĭbērĕ cōnantūr. 17. Itĭnĕrĕ hostēs pröhĭbēbĭmūs. 18. Mīlĭtēs ĭtĭnĕrĕ höstēs pröhĭbērĕ cōnābuntūr. 19. Sī ĭtĭnĕrĕ mīlĭtēs pröhĭbuissēmūs. 20. Legātī nostrōs vĭrōs mŏnuērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. You have, you were having, you will have had. 2. If you should have, if you had, if you had had. 3. Have ye, he shall have, they shall have. 4. To restrain, to have restrained, to be about to restrain. 5. If we should keep the soldiers from the town. 6. If we shall have kept the soldiers from the town. 7. Let us keep the enemy from the town. 8. We shall attempt to keep the enemy from the town.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ See Ln. XXXV., Note 1. ² See Ln. XXIX., Examples.
- ⁸ See LN. VI., NOTE 5.
- ⁴ Define the use of the Future Perfect Tense. (42)
- ⁵ Define the use of the Imperative Mood. (47)
- ⁶ Itinere is an Ablative of Separation. A. & G. 243: A. & S. 413: B. 256, Rule XLI.: B. & M. 916: G. 388: H. 413; 414: C. 177.
 - ⁷ See Ln. XXIX., Ex. 7. ⁸ See **69**.

What are the Personal Endings of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, Active Voice? Of the Imperative? Of the Infinitives and Participles? How are the different Stems of a verb found? (28, 45, 50) What two uses has the Perfect Indicative? (43)

LESSON XLIV.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

93. Accusative of Time. A. & G. 256: A. & S. 423: B. 220, Rule XI.: B. & M. 950: G. 337: H. 379: C. 129, I. This answers the question, How long?

VOCABULARY.

dēleš, ērš, ēvī, ētǔm, destroy.
dŏceš, ērš, uī, doctǔm, teach.
yjūbeš, ērš, jussī, jussūm, command, order.
ymaneš, ērš, mansī, mansŭm, stay, remain.

mŏveð, ērĕ, mōvī, mōtŭm, obtĭneð, ērĕ, uī, obtentŭm, possessið, ōnĭs, f. vīcŭs, ī, m.

move, remove. hold, obtain. possession. village.

Analyze and parse.

1. Germāni multos vīcos dēlēvěrant. 2. Aliud¹ ĭter hăbēbant nullum. 3. Quăm² plūrīmas cīvĭtātes hăbēbant.
4. Allobrŏges trans Rhŏdănum vīcos possessiōnesquĕ³ hăbēbant. 5. Puĕros⁴ littĕras⁴ dŏceāmus. 6. Dīcĭt mātrem⁵ fīlias littĕras dŏcēre. 7. In Galliā ultĕriōre multos annos⁶ mănēbīmus. 8. Caesar sĕnātōrem hortātur ŭt⁵ ĭn castris multos menses maneat.⁵ 9. Regnum ĭn Sēquănis multos annos obtĭnuĕrat. 10. Divĭco lēgātiōnis lŏcum princĭpem obtĭnēbat.
11. Sī ĭmpĕrātor castra mŏveat, mīlĭtēs fortius⁶ pugnent.
12. Castra⁶ movēre¹o cĕlĕrius nōn pŏtuērunt.¹¹ 13. Itĭnĕrĕ¹² Helvētios prŏhĭbēre nōn pŏtĕrunt.¹¹ 14. Helvētii suis fīnĭbus Germānos prŏhĭbēbant. 15. Proxĭmum¹³ ĭter ĭn ultĕriōrem Galliam pĕr Alpes est. 16 Sĕd ĭn summo jŭgo duas (two) lĕgiōnes,¹⁴ quas (which) ĭn Galliā cĭtĕriōre proxĭme conscripsĕrat (he had enlisted), ĕt omnia auxĭlia¹⁴ collŏcāri¹⁵ jussit.

Notes and Questions.

- 1 Which adjectives have their Genitive in its and Dative in i? (24)
- ² See Ln. XLII., Note 7.
- ³ See Ln. XXIII., Vy., Note.

4 See 71.

⁵ See 53.

- 6 See 93.
- ⁷ How is ut maneat to be translated? See Ln. XXXVIII., Note 3.
- 8 From what adjective is fortiter derived?
- 9 What does castra signify in the Singular?
- 10 See 69.
- 11 How do potuerunt and poterunt differ from each other?
- 12 See Ln. XLIII., Note 6. 18 proximum, shortest.
- 14 legiones and auxilia are subjects of collocari. (53)
- 15 collocari (to be stationed) with its subjects is object of jussit. (52)

LESSON XLV.

VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE.

n the entire Passive Voice of the Second Conjugation.
): A. & S. 223: B. 79; 80: B. & M. 289: G. 125;
3: C. 75.

, a, of this book.

VOCABULARY.

contineo, ere, ui, contentum,
ditio, onis, f.
oceanus, i, m.
rapina, ae, f.
servitus, ūtis, f.
teneo, ere, ui, tentum,
undique, adv.

hem in, bound.
dominion, power.
ocean.
plundering.
slavery.
hold, keep.
on all sides.

Give a complete synopsis of each verb and parse.

1. Una pars continētur¹ Gărumnā² flūmine,³ Oceăno, finibus Belgārum. 2. Undiquĕ lŏci nātūrā⁴ Helvētii continentur.
3. Summus mons⁵ ā Tito Lăbiēno tĕnēbātur. 4. Nunciat summum montem ā hostibus tentum essĕ. 5. Sī summus mons ā hostibus teneātur, nostri mīlitĕs quām acerrime⁶ pugnent. 6. Aedui in servitūte atquĕ in ditiōne Germānōrum tenti sunt. 7. Caesar mĕmŏriā tĕnēbat. 8. Hostis ā Caesāre răpīnis² prŏhibēbātur. 9. Summus mons ā hostibus tĕnēri nōn pŏtest.8 10. Galli tĕnēri in servitūte nōn pŏtĕrant.8 11. Obsīdes multos annos in servitūte tenēbantur. 12. Sī multos annos in servitūte tenti essēmus, nōn fēlīces fuissēmus.

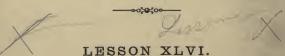
Write in Latin.

1. The top⁵ of the mountain will be held by Caesar. 2. The top of the mountain could⁸ not be held by Caesar. 3. He says (that) the top of the mountain was held by the Germans.

- 4. If Cassius should keep in memory. 5. The Germans are hemmed in on all sides by the character of their country.
- 6. The Germans will be kept from plundering by the Romans.
- 7. They were held in slavery many years.9

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ Define the Passive Voice? (72) What are the Personal Endings of the Passive Voice? Name the three Stems of contineo. On which Stem are the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive formed?
 - ² See **54**. ⁸ See 2
 - 4 loci natura, by the character of their country.
 - 5 summus mons, the top of the mountain; lit., the highest mountain.
 - . 6 From acriter; from what adjective is acriter derived?
 - ⁷ răpinis; translate by the Singular; see LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.
- ⁸ When possum governs a Passive Infinitive render it by can, if in the Present Tense; by could, if in a Past Tense; e. g. těněri potěst, can be held; těněri potěrat, could be held.
 - 9 See 93.



HEODON ALVI.

DEPONENT VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION.

95. Learn the entire Deponent Verb of the Second Conjugation. A. & G. 135: A. & S. 223, use moneor for model: B. 46; 55; 93: B. & M. 304; 308: G. 211; 143; 144: H. 231, 1-3; Note under 232: C. p. 99.

VOCABULARY.

intueor, ērī, intuĭtŭs sŭm,¹ look at.

nē, adv. not, used with the Subjunctive and

Imperative.

nē, conj. that not; after verbs of fearing,
that; used with the Subjunctive.

polliceor, ērī, pollicitūs sūm, promise. , věreor, ērī, věritūs sūm, fear.

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Aedui frūmentum pollicentur.² 2. Aedui frūmentum publice polliciti ĕrant. 3. Vĕreor nē Aedui Rōmānis³ frūmentum polliceantur.⁴ 4. Nē⁵ frūmentum polliceāmur.⁶ 5. Sī Aedui frūmentum mātūrum polliciti essent, Caesar fēlix fuisset. 6. Rōmāni nōn hostem verentur sĕd angustias itinĕris. 7. Nē Divitiăci anĭmum offendĕret (he should offend) vĕrēbātur. 8. Nunciat¹ Sēquănos terram intuēri. 9. Nĕgat³ Rōmānos hostem vĕrītos essĕ. 10. Sōlem intuēri nōn possūmus. 11. Nē sōlem intuēāmur. 12. Vērēbāmur nē hostes agros nostros pŏpūlārentur. 13. Vĕrēmur nē hostes agros nostros pŏpūlentur. 14. Vĕrēmĭni nē hostes agros vestros pŏpūlentur. 15. Rōmānis frūmentum nōn polliciti sūmus. 16. Rōmāni Helvētiis obsīdes nōn pollicēbuntur.

Write in Latin.

1. We were exhorting and promising. 2. They have promised ripe corn. 3. He says that they have promised ripe corn. 4. He fears that the Romans will promise corn to our enemies. 3 5. Let us not promise corn to the Gauls. 6. Let us not look at the men. 7. Let us not fear the difficulties of the route. 8. I fear that the route will be 4 dangerous.

Notes and Questions.

8 See Ln. XXXIII., Note 3.

¹ See Ln. XXXV., Vy., 1. ² Define a Deponent Verb. (77) What Participles do Deponent Verbs have? What Infinitives?

³ See **39**.

⁴ When the *Present Subjunctive* depends upon a verb of fearing which is in the Present Tense, render it by the *Future Indicative*: ne Aedui policeantur, that the Aedui will promise.

⁵ në is here an adverb.

⁶ See Ln. XXIX., Example 7. ⁹ they, eos.

⁷ What is the object of nunciat?

LESSON XLVII.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

96. A. & G. 68; 69: A. & S. 126; 127: B. 142; 143, Rem. 2: B. & M. 137: G. 67; 68: H. 116, 1, 2; 118, (1): C. 34.

97. Declension of domus. A. & G. 70, f: A. & S. 130: B. 143, Rem. 8: B. & M. 144: G. 67, 2: H. 119: C. 34, 1.

VOCABULARY.

adventŭs, ūs, m.
commoveo, ērē, commovi, commotum,
conspectŭs, ūs, m.
cornū, ūs, n.
dexter, dextră, dextrŭm,
domus, ūs, f.
equitatus, ūs, m.
exercitus, ūs, m.
impetus, ūs, m.
paene, adv.
semper, adv.
sustineo, ēre, uī, sustentum,

arrival, approach.
move, disturb.
sight; view.
horn; of an army, wing.
right.
house; domi, at home.
cavalry.
army.
attack.
almost.
always.
sustain, withstand.

Parse the nouns and verbs.

1. Dē Caesăris adventū.¹ 2. Helvētii Caesăris adventū² commōti sunt. 3. In conspectū hostium. 4. Omnium³ ex conspectū. 5. Paenĕ ĭn conspectū exercĭtūs nostri⁴ agri vastantur. 6. Cǔm ĕquĭtātū Helvētiōrum. 7. Magnum nǔmĕrum ĕquĭtātūs sempĕr hǎbēbat. 8. Equĭtātūs sustinēbat hostium impĕtūm. 9. Lǎbiēnus exercĭtuī⁵ Rōmāno praefuit. 10. Hostes impĕtūs mīlĭtum sustĭnēre nōn pŏtuērunt. 11. Equĭtātūm omnem praemittit (he sends forward) qui⁶ impĕtūm hostium sustĭneat.⁶ 12. Nē hostium adventū commŏveāmur. 13. A dextro cornū; ad dextrum cornū. 14. Caesar dŏmi fuit. 15. Sēquǎni ĭtĭnĕrĕ⁻ exercĭtum nostrum prŏhībēre cōnantur.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 16. How many declensions are there in Latin, and how distinguished from one another? (8) What is the Stem-Ending of each? What are the Case-Endings of the Fourth Declension?

² See 79.

⁸ See Ln. XXXVIII., Note 10.

4 nostri modifies exercitüs.

5 See 67.

6 qui - sustineat, to withstand.

⁷ See Ln. XLIII., Note 6.



LESSON XLVIII.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

98. A. & G. Note; 72; 73; 74, d: A. & S. 132, a; 133 (2), (3): B. 144, Note; 145, Rem. 1, 2: B. & M. all of 146; 147: G. 69, Remarks 1, 2; 70: H. 120, 1, 2; 122; 123: C. 35.

VOCABULARY.

commeātŭs, ūs, m.
compărŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,
diēs, diēī, m.
fīdēs, fīdĕī, f.
pernĭciēs, pernĭciēī, f.
prŏfectio, ōnĭs, f.
rēs, rĕī, f.
spēs, spĕī, f.

supplies, provisions.
prepare.
day.
faith, pledge, promise.
ruin, destruction.
departure.
thing, affair.
hope, expectation.

Analyze and parse.

Cŭm pernĭciē¹ exercĭtūs.
 Ad suam pernĭciēm.
 Uno diē.
 Diem dīcunt (they appoint).
 Sĭnĕ spē.
 In mĕliōrem² spēm.
 Magnam ĭn spēm.
 Magnas spēs habēmus.
 Rēs Helvētiis³ enunciāta est.
 Pŭtat rēs Helvētiis enunciātas essē.
 Omnes rēs ăd prŏfectiōnem compărātae sunt.
 Caesar paucos diēs⁴ ăd⁵ Vĕsontiōnem commeātūs causā⁶ mŏrātur.
 Caesar Gallis

fĭdĕm dăbit. 14. Vĕreor nē Caesar Helvētiis fĭdĕm det. 15. Sī Caesar Germānis fĭdĕm det, Rōmāni nōn laetentur. 16. Caesar Divitiăco maxĭmam fĭdĕm hăbēbat. 17. Germānis parvam hābet fĭdĕm. 18. Caesări fĭdĕm hābeāmus.

Write in Latin.

1. The affair will be reported to the Romans. 2. He says (that) the affair has been reported to the Romans. 3. We had great expectations. 4. We shall prepare all things for the departure. 5. With the ruin of many cities. 6. We shall delay many days near⁵ Rome for the sake of provisions. 7. We fear that the leader will give⁷ a pledge to the Romans. 8. We have the greatest confidence in the Helvetii. 9. They have very little ¹⁰ confidence in the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ What is the Stem of pernicies, dies, spes, fides? When is the final Stem-Vowel short? What are the Case-Endings of the Fifth Declension? Which nouns are complete in the Plural?
 - ² See 84.

8 See 39.

- ⁴ See 93. ⁵ See Ln. XXXV., Note 4.
- ⁶ See General Vocabulary under causā.
- ⁷ See Ln. XLVI., Note 4.
- ⁸ Divitiaco fídem habebat, had confidence in Divitiacus; lit., had confidence to Divitiacus. See 39.
 - 9 See Ln. XXIX., Ex. 7.

¹⁰ See Ln. XXXIX., Note 2.



LESSON XLIX.

VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE.

99. Learn the entire Active Voice of the Third Conjugation. A. & G. 131: A. & S. 222 rego: B. 87; 88: B. & M. 292: G. 131; 132: H. 209; 241-248: C. 76.

- a. The Imperative and Present Indicative have a connecting vowel between the Stem and Personal Ending; this connecting vowel is **u** before **n**, elsewhere **i**. The First Person Singular Present Indicative has the termination **ŏ**; the Second Person Singular Present Imperative, the termination **č**.
- b. The Imperfect Indicative has a connecting vowel (ē) between the Stem and Tense-Sign; the Present Participle and Present Infinitive, a connecting vowel (e) between the Stem and Ending.
- c. The Future Indicative has a connecting vowel between the Stem and Personal Ending; this is a in the First Singular, elsewhere e.

VOCABULARY.

contendő, ěrě, contendî, contentům, hasten, march rapidly.
dîmittő, ěrě, dîmīsī, dīmissům, dismiss.
gěrő, ěrě, gessî, gestům, carry, carry on.
mittő, ěrě, mīsī, missům, send.
tollő, ěrě, sustůli, sublātům, lift, take away.

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb; name its elements; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Caesar in Italiam magnis itineribus¹ contendit. 2. Caesar ad hostes contendit equitatumque omnem mittit.² 3. Caesarem hortemur ut ad hostes contendat. 4. Helvētii lēgātos ad Caesarem mittunt. 5. Helvētii exercitum Rōmānum subjugum³ mīsērunt. 6. Nunciat Helvētios exercitum Rōmānum subjugum mīsissē. 7. Impērātor cēleritēr concilium dīmittit. 8. Consul spem fugae tollēbāt. 9. Tollē, consul, spem fugae. 10. Belgae cum Germānis continentēr bellum gessērunt. 11. Sī omnes rēs ad profectionem comparātae sint, in Galliam ultēriōrem contendāmus. 12. Vērēmur ut⁴ rex cum hostībus bellum gērāt.⁵

Write in Latin.

1. Let us hasten into farther Gaul. 2. Let us urge the lieutenant to hasten into hither Gaul. 3. The Romans carried on war with the Gauls many years.⁶ 4. The Sequani had sent our army under the yoke. 5. The king will have taken

away the hope of flight. 6. The king had taken away the hope of flight. 7. He thinks that the king has taken away the hope of flight.

Notes and Questions.

1 magnis itiněribus, by long marches. See 54.

- ² Name the Stems of mitto. What are the Future Endings of the Third Conjugation? Of the First and Second? What is the sign of the Imperfect Indicative?
- ³ When was an army "sent under a yoke," and why? See General Vocabulary under jügum.
 - 4 ut after verbs of fearing is to be rendered that not.

⁵ See Ln. XLVI., Note 4.

6 What question does "many years" answer? (93)



LESSON L.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE: THIRD CONJUGATION.

100. Learn the entire Passive Voice of the Third Conjugation. A. & G. 131: A. & S. 223 regor: B. 87; 88: B. & M. 293: G. 133; 134: H. 210: C. 76.

See also 73, a, of this book, observing that in the Third Conjugation the exception is the Second Person Singular of the *Present* Indicative instead of the Future.

VOCABULARY.

cingŏ, ĕrĕ, cinxī, cinctŭm, surround, encircle.
dēlĭġŏ, ĕrĕ, dēlēgī, dělectǔm, select, choose.
dīcŏ, ĕrĕ, dixī, dictǔm, say, tell.
dūcŏ, ĕrĕ, duxī, ductǔm, lead, draw.
vincŏ, ĕrĕ, vīcī, victǔm, conquer.

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

Exercitus Rōmānus ab Helvētiis sub jugum missus est.¹
 Orgētorix dēligitur.¹
 Cassius lēgātus² dēligētur.
 Vix singuli carri dūcēbantur.
 Vix singuli carri per angustias

dueti ĕrant. 6. Paenĕ tōtum oppĭdum flūmĭne³ cingĭtŭr. 7. Nē ăb hostĭbus³ vincāmur. 8. Sī āb hostĭbus vietī essēmus, victoriā⁴ glōriātī essent.⁵ 9. Sī Caesar exercĭtui⁶ praesit, nōn vincāmĭnī. 10. Nōn impĕrātor² dēlĭgēris. 11. Carri pĕr angustias dūcī nōn possunt.⁵ 12. Germāni ā Rōmānis vincī nōn pŏtĕrant.⁵ 13. Urbs cingĭtur; urbs cingētur. 14. Castra vallo¹o cincta sunt. 15. Sī castra vallo cingantur, nōn vincāmus. 16. Sī Caesar impĕrātor dēlĭgātur, omnes laetentur.

Write in Latin.

1. The Helvetii had been sent under a yoke. 2. Caesar said (that) the Gauls had been sent under a yoke. 3. The wagons will be drawn with difficulty one by one. 4. Almost the entire town was surrounded by a river. 5. We shall not be conquered by the enemy. 6. We fear that you will be conquered by the Germans. 7. As brave soldiers as possible will be selected. 8. The best (men) have been selected. 9. We fear that our soldiers will be sent under a yoke. 10. You fear that Titus will not 11 send the enemy under a yoke. 11. We fear that Caesar will not select the bravest soldiers. 12. We shall select as many soldiers as possible. 13. If the general should select the bravest men, all would rejoice. 14. Let us select as brave soldiers as possible.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What are the Personal Endings of the Passive Voice? (72) What are the Future Endings of the Third Conjugation, Passive Voice? Of the First and Second Conjugations, Passive Voice? Which verbs have a Passive Voice? Ans. Transitive Verbs, i. e. verbs which in the Active Voice take a direct object. (34)

² See **64**.

⁴ See 79 and Ex. 2.

⁶ See 67.

⁸ See Ln. XLVI., Note 4.

¹⁰ See 54.

⁸ See Ln. XXXI., Note 6.

⁵ See Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 5.

⁷ See Ln. XLV., Note 8.

⁹ See LN. XLII., NOTE 7.

¹¹ See LN. XLIX., NOTE 4.

LESSON LI.

VERBS: FOURTH CONJUGATION.

- 101. Learn the entire conjugation of audio, Active and Passive. A. & G. 132: A. & S. 222; 223: B. 83; 84: B. & M. 300; 301: G. 135-138: H. 211; 212: C. 78.
- a. The Third Person Plural of the Present Indicative and Future Imperative has the connecting vowel **u**: e. g. audi-**u**-nt, audi-**u**-nto; see also **99**, b and c.

VOCABULARY

audiŏ, îrĕ, īvī, ītǔm, hear.

con-věniŏ, īrĕ, vēnī, ventǔm, come together, assemble.

mūniŏ, irĕ, ivī, ītǔm, fortify.

per-věniŏ, īrĕ, vēnī, ventǔm, come to, arrive.

věniŏ, īrĕ, vēnī, ventǔm, come.

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Puěri multas res audiunt. 2. Multae res ā puěris audiuntur. 3. Mīlĭtes impěrātōrem audient. 4. Impěrātor ā mīlĭtĭbus audiētŭr. 5. Belgae tōtum oppĭdum mūnīvērunt.¹ 6. Tōtum oppĭdum ā Belgis mūnītŭm est. 7. Sī castra ā mīlĭtĭbus mūnītă essent, hostes nōn vīcissent. 8. Mūniāmŭs urbem Rōmam. 9. Caesar ĭn Galliam cĭtĕriōrem vēnĭt.² 10. Vēnī, vīdī,³ vīcī.³ 11. Ad rīpam Rhŏdăni omnes conveniunt. 12. Mīlĭtes hortātŭr ŭt ād rīpam Rhŏdăni conveniant. 13. In fīnes Gallōrum pervēnērunt, ŭbi (where) proptěr vulněra mīlĭtum paucos dies⁴ mōrātī sunt. 14. Helvētii ĭn Aeduōrum fīnes pervēnērant⁵ ĕt agros pŏpŭlābantŭr.6

Write in Latin.

1. The soldiers had heard many things. 2. Many things are heard by the soldiers. 3. The ambassador will be heard.

4. The Romans came into farther Gaul. 5. They fortified Geneva, a walled town. 6. Let us fortify many towns. 7. We came, we saw, we conquered. 8. The bravest soldiers have assembled on the bank of the Rhine.

Notes and Questions.

- 1 What other Ending has the Perfect Indicative Active, Third Plural?
- ² How does venit differ from venit in meaning?
- 8 vidi from video; vici from vinco.
- 4 See 93.
- ⁵ How does the Pluperfect Indicative represent the action? (42)
- ⁶ How does the Imperfect Indicative represent the action ? (36)
- 7 How many conjugations are there, and how distinguished from one another?

LESSON LII.

THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN IO.

102. Learn the entire conjugation, Active and Passive, of căpiŏ. A. & G. 131, page 100: A. & S. 222; 223: B. 92: B. & M. 294-297: G. 139; 140: H. 217-219: C. 77.

VOCABULARY.

captum, take, capture. căpiŏ, capěrě, cēpī, cŭpītŭm, cŭpiō, cŭpĕrĕ, cŭpīvī, desire. make, do; ĭtěr făcěrě, to făciŏ, făcĕrĕ, fēcī, factum, march. fŏdiŏ, fŏděrě, fōdī, fossum, dig. fŭgiŏ, fŭgĕrĕ, fūgī, fŭgĭtŭm, flee. jăciō, jăcĕrĕ, jēcī, jactum, throw, hurl. seize, plunder. răpiō, răpěrě, răpuī, raptum,

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Rōmānī multa oppīda cēpērunt. 2. Multa oppīda ā Rōmānis captă sunt. 3. Helvētii magnas possessiones căpient.

4. Magnae possessiones ab Helvētiis cupientur. 5. Nostri mīlītes tēla in hostes jāciēbant.¹ 6. Germāni castra Romānorum rapuērunt. 7. Germāni magnam fossam foderant. 8. Fossas multas et magnas foderīmus. 9. Fugite,² mīlītes,³ in urbem. 10. Dux nunciat hostes⁴ oppīdum captūrōs⁵ esse. 11. Lēgātus dixit oppīdum ā mīlītībus captum esse.⁶ 12. Una pars inītium ā flūmīne Rhodano capit. 13. Lēgātus verētur nē locus ex internēcione exercitūs nomen capiāt.⊓ 14. Helvētii pēr provinciam nostram iter faciēbant. 15. Helvētii pēr agrum Sēquānorum iter in Aeduōrum fines facient. 16. Iter faciāmus in fines Germānōrum. 17. Lēgātus mīlītes hortābātur quō iter cēlērius facerent.8 18. Mīlītes iter cēlērius facere non possunt.

Notes.

- ¹ Change sentences 5, 6, 7 into the Passive form; compare sentences 3 and 4.
 - ² See 47.

³ See Ln. V., Note 5.

- 4 See 53.
- ⁵ Why captūros and not captūrus?
- 6 captum esse, had been taken.
- ⁷ See Ln. XLVI., Note 4. ⁸ See Ln. XXXVIII., Note 3.
- 9 celerius, an adjective, modifying iter.

LESSON LIII.

DEPONENT VERBS: THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

103. Learn the entire Third and Fourth Conjugations of Deponent Verbs. A. & G. 135: A. & S. 223, use regor and audior for models: B. 93: B. & M. 309; 310: G. 145-148: H. 231, 1-3; Note under 232: C. p. 100.

104. Ablative with certain Deponents. A. & G. 249: A. & S. 419: B. 258, a: B. & M. 880: G. 405: H. 421, I.: C. 167

VOCABULARY.

3					
L	mētior,	mētīrī,	mensŭs	sŭm,	measure, d
Ž	nītor,	nītī, nīsì	ís or nixŭs	sŭm,	strive, ende
L	ŏrior,	ŏrīrī,	ortŭs	sŭm,	rise, begin
	pŏtior,	pŏtīrī,	pŏtītŭs	sŭm,	get possess
	proficiscor,	prŏfĭciscī,	prŏfectŭs	sŭm,	set out, de
	sĕquor,	sĕquī,	sĕcūtŭs	sŭm,	follow.
	ūtor,	ūtī.	นีรนัร	sŭm,	use, make

measure, deal out.
strive, endeavor.
rise, begin.
get possession of, obtain.
set out, depart.
follow.
use, make use of.

Conjugate; name the Stems; give synopses; parse.

1. Caesar hostes sĕquĭtŭr. 2. Caesar paucos dies³ mŏrātŭs² hostes sĕcūtŭs est. 3. Liscus cŭm lĕgiōnĭbus ē castris prŏfectŭs est. 4. Caesar mātūrat ăb urbe prŏfĭciscī. 5. Belgae āb extrēmis Galliae fīnĭbus⁴ ŏriuntur. 6. Mīlĭtes frūmento nōn ūtentŭr. 7. Frūmento ūtī⁵ hŏmĭnes nōn pŏtĕrant. 8. Pāce ūtī nōn possŭmus. 9. Impĕdīmentis castrisquĕ nostri⁶ pŏtītī sunt. 10. Nītēbantŭr ŭt impĕrio pŏtīrentŭr. 11. Nītentŭr ŭt¹ tōtīus Galliae impĕrio pŏtiantŭr. 12. Galli nītuntŭr ŭt impĕdīmentis pŏtiantŭr. 13. Dux vĭrīs⁵ frūmentum mētītŭr. 14. Liscus mīlĭtībus frūmentum nōn mensus ĕrat. 15. Nītāmŭr ŭt tōtīus Ităliae impĕrio pŏtiāmŭr.

Write in Latin.

Liscus will follow the enemy.
 Our soldiers followed the Gauls.
 The Gauls were following our army.
 When I shall have set out from the city.
 We shall make use of the corn.
 The lieutenant is striving to get possession of the camp.
 Let us strive to get possession of the camp.
 They attempt to get possession of the camp.
 The Gauls were striving to get possession of the entire town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The Present Stem of Deponent Verbs is found in the Present Infinitive by dropping the Ending ri in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, and the Ending i in the Third (cf. 28): e.g. HORTĀRI, VĒRĒRI,

PŎTir1, and ŪT1 are Present Infinitives; HORTA, VĚRE, POTI, and ŪT their Present Stems.

The Supine Stem of Deponent Verbs is found in the Perfect Participle by dropping the ending ŭs (cf. 50): e. g. Hortātus, vērītūs, potītūs, and ūsūs are Perfect Participles; Hortāt, vērīt, potīt, and ūs their Supine Stems.

- ² mŏrātŭs, having delayed.
- ⁸ dies, why in the Accusative?
- 4 finibus, limits.

⁵ See 69. ⁷ See Ln. XXXVIII., Note 3.

6 nostri, our men.

⁸ See 39.

Which Stem is wanting in Deponent Verbs? What is a Deponent Verb? What is the derivation and meaning of deponent? See under depone, General Vocabulary.

End of terms would

GENERAL EXERCISE: PLACE.

105. Place to which. A. & G. 258, b: A. & S. 425, 426 (1), a: B. 221, Rule XII.: B. & M. 938: G. 410: H. 380, I., II., 2, 1): C. 130.

106. Place at or in which. A. & G. 258, c, d: A. & S. 425; 426 (1), (2), a: B. 249, RULE XXXVII.: B. & M. 932; 933: G. 412, REM. 1: H. 425, I., II.; 426, 2: C. 148, 1, 2.

107. Place from which. A. & G. 258, a. A. & S. 425; 426 (1), (2): B. 254, RULE XXXIX.: B. & M. 941; 943: G. 411: H. 412, I., II., 1: C. 182.

a. 105 answers the question Whither? or To what place? 106, Where? or In what place? 107, Whence? or From what place?

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Caesar Gěnāvam (105) contendit, Caesar hastened to Geneva.
- 2. Liscus Aquileiae (106) fuit, Liscus was in Aquileia.
- 3. Cassius Romā (107) vēnit, Cassius came from Rome.
- 4. Divitiacus plūrīmum domī poterat, Divitiacus was very powerful at home.

VOCABULARY.

dŏmŭs, ūs, f.

nĭhĭl (an indecl. neuter noun), Noviodūnŭm, ī, n. plūrĭmŭs, ă, ŭm,

prae-mittő, ĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm, rĕ-vertor, vertī, versŭs sŭm, Suēvī, ōrŭm, m. trā-dūcŏ, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm, house, home: domi, at home;
domum, home, homeward;
domo, from home.
nothing.

nothing.

Noviodunum.

most: plūrīmŭm possě, to
be very powerful.
send forward.
return.
the Suevi.
lead across.

Analyze¹ and parse.

1. Consŭles Rōmae plūrimos¹ annos² fuērunt. 2. Rōmā vēnērunt lēgāti Gĕnāvam. 3. Divitiacus plūrimum³ dŏmi⁴ atquĕ in rĕliquā Galliā pŏtĕrat.³ 4. Impĕrātor omnem ĕquĭtātum Noviodūnum praemīsit. 5. Dŏmum mittam pueros mālos. 6. Suēvi ad rīpas Rhēni vēnĕrant ĕt dŏmum rĕvertēbantur. 7. Nītēmur ut Norēiam rĕvertāmur. 8. Sī Rōmā prŏficiscāmur,⁵ non dŏmum rĕvertāmur. 9. Vĕrēmur ut nostri amīci Rōmae multos dies māneant.6 10. Helvētii jām pĕr angustias ĕt fīnes Sēquānōrum suas cōpias trāduxĕrant ĕt in Aeduōrum fīnes pervēnĕrant.

Write in Latin.

1. We shall be at home very many ¹ days.² 2. The friends will come home. 3. They came from Noviodunum to Rome.
4. The consul sent forward all the troops to Geneva. 5. He fears that we shall not⁶ return ⁶ home. 6. Let ⁷ us return home. 7. They will attempt to return to Geneva. 8. He was not able to return home. 9. If the soldiers had marched more quickly ⁸ they would have come to the banks of the Rhone.

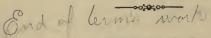
Notes.

1 See Ln. XXXIX., Note 2.

² See 93.

8 See Ex. 4.

- 4 How is domus declined ? (97)
- ⁵ How is the Present Subjunctive with **si** translated? (Ln. XXIX., Ex. 1.)
 - ⁶ See Ln. XLVI., Note 4 and Ln. XLIX., Note 4.
- 7 See Ln. XXIX., Ex. 7.
 - 8 See Ln. LII., Note 9 and Ln. XXXVI., Ex 5.



LESSON LV.

NUMERALS. - EXTENT IN SPACE.

108. Learn the Cardinals and Ordinals, the declension of ūnŭs, duŏ, trēs, and millě. A. & G. 94, a-e: A. & S. 146; 156; 157 (1), (2); 158-160; 161, g: B. 167; 168, REM. 1-5: B. & M. 201-204; 206; 207: G. 92-94; 308: H. 171; 172; 174-179: C. 54; 55, 1, 3.

109. Extent in Space. A. & G. 257: A. & S. 423: B. 220, RULE XI.: B. & M. 958: G. 335; 336: H. 379: C. 129, I. This answers such questions as How far? How deep? How high? How wide? How long?

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Castră ăb urbě mīliă passuum octŏ ăbsunt, the camp is Eight miles distant from the city.
- 2. Flüměn pědēs vīgintī altům est, the river is twenty feet deep.
- 3. Mons pěděs nongentôs altŭs est, the mountain is NINE HUNDRED FEET high.

VOCABULARY.

altěr, altěră, altěrům, lātŭs, ă, ŭm, longŭs, ă, ŭm, one of two, the other. wide.

long.

passus, ūs, m. step, pace; mille passus, a mile; lit., a thousand paces.

pēs, pědís, m.
pōnö, pōněrě, pŏsuī, pŏsĭtŭm,
vĭgĭliă, ae, f.

foot.

place, put; castră poněrě, to

pitch a camp.

watch; de prima vigilia, in the

first watch.

N. B. No numerals will be given in the Vocabularies; they must be learned from the grammar.

Translate and parse.

1. Flūmen est pědes quadrāgintā trēs lātum.¹ 2. Mons děcěm mīliă² trěcentos pědes altus est. 3. Fossa pědes trěcentos longa est, sex pědes alta. 4. Fossa pědes quinděcím lāta est. 5. Mīlǐtes duas fossas quinděcím pědes lātas fōdērunt. 6. Caesar dŏmum³ tertiam⁴ lěgiōnem mīsit. 7. Dē tertiā vĭgĭliā⁵ centŭm ět trīgintā quinquĕ mīlĭtes praemittit. 8. Mīliā passuum⁶ trià äb urbe castra pŏsuĭt. 9. Oppĭda äd¹ quadrāgintā ět vīcos äd quadringentōs incendunt. 10. Erant ĭtĭnĕra duŏ; ūnum pĕr Sēquănos; altĕrum pĕr prōvinciam nostram. 11. Summa⁵ ĕrat căpĭtum Helvētiōrum⁵ mīliā dŭcentă ĕt sexāgintā triā. 12. Circĭter mīliā hŏmĭnum centum ĕt trīgintā sŭperfuērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. The river is sixteen feet deep. 2. The river is two hundred feet wide. 3. The mountain is eight thousand feet high. 4. The river is ninety-four miles long. 5. The men dug a ditch ten feet deep. 6. We shall send the soldiers home in the second watch. 7. They burned about eighty towns. 8. We shall pitch our camp about twenty miles from Rome.

Notes and Questions.

What does latum modify? What is it modified by?

² Spelled also with two l's: millia.

⁸ See 105. 4 What kind of a numeral is tertiam?

- ⁵ The Romans divided the night into four equal parts named prima vigilia, secunda vigilia, tertia vigilia, quarta vigilia.
 - 6 A Roman pace (passus) as a measure of length was about five feet.
 - 7 ad with numerals signifies about.
 - 8 summa, the sum total.
 - 9 căpitum Helvētiorum, of the Helvetii; lit. of the heads of the Helvetii.

LESSON LVI.

COMPOUND NOUNS. - ABLATIVE OF TIME.

- 110. Compound Nouns. A. & G. 77, 6, a: A. & S. 300, a: B. 151: B. & M. 176: H. 125; 126: C. 106, 1, 2.
- 111. Ablative of Time. A. & G. 256: A. & S. 424: B. 252, RULE XXXVIII.: B. & M. 949: G. 392: H. 429: C. 185. The Ablative of Time answers the questions When? At what time? Within what time? What question does the Accusative of Time answer? See 93.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Die septimo pervenit, he arrived on the seventh day.
- 2. Proximā noctě castră movit, the next night he broke up camp.

VOCABULARY.

dī-vidő, viděrě, vīsī, vīsum, in-cölő, cölěrě, cöluī, cultum, jusjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, n. lăcus, ūs, m. mensis, is, m. pötens, pötentis, adj. prō, prep. w. abl. respublica, rěīpublicae, f.

divide, separate.
inhabit, dwell.
oath.
lake.
month.
able, powerful.
before, for.
republic, commonwealth.

Analyze and parse.

Galli Rōmānis¹ jusjūrandum dĕdērunt.
 Dixit Gallos Rōmānis jusjūrandum dĕdisse.²
 Multas res jūrĕjūrando³

sanxērunt (they ratified). 4. In ⁴ rempublicam lēgātus sex lĕgiōnes duxit. 5. Prō rēpublica; prō castris. 6. Pĕr trēs pŏtentissĭmos pŏpŭlos tōtīus ⁵ Galliae. 7. In fīnes Lingŏnum die quarto pervēnērunt. 8. Proxĭma nocte dē quarta vĭgĭlia ⁶ castra mōvērunt. 9. Proxĭmo die Caesar ē castris cōpias suas ēduxit. 10. Sōlis occāsū suas cōpias Ariovistus ĭn castra rĕduxit. 11. Dŏmi ⁷ mansērunt septĕm menses. ⁸ 12. Quadrāgintā trēs annos regnāvit. 13. Nītāmur ⁹ ŭt sōlis occāsu prŏfĭciscāmur. ¹⁰ 14. Gallia est ¹¹ omnis dīvīsa ¹¹ in partes trēs, quārum (of which) ūnam ¹² incŏlunt Belgae, ĭliam ¹² Aquītāni, ¹³ tertiam ¹² Galli. ¹³ 15. A lācu Lemanno ād montem Jūram fossam vīgintī pĕdes ¹⁴ lātam fōdit. 16. Dē tertia vĭgĭlia cŭm lĕgiōnĭbus trĭbus ē castris prŏfectus est. 17. Dīcit hostes sŭb monte castra pŏsuisse mīlia ¹⁴ passuum āb nostris castris octŏ. ¹⁵

Notes.

¹ See 39. ² See Ln. XVII.

8 See 54. 4 in, against.

Which adjectives are declined like tôtus? (24)
See Ln. LV., Note 5.
See 106.

8 See 93. 9 See Ln. XXIX., Ex. 7.

10 See Ln. XXXVIII., Note 3.

11 est — divisa is the same as divisa — est.

12 Understand partem. 13 Subject of incolunt understood.

14 See 109.

LESSON LVII.

PRONOUNS: PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE, AND REFLEXIVE.

112. Learn the declension of &gŏ, tū, suī. A. & G. 98, 1, 2, b, 3; 99, d, e: A. & S. 178; 179; 186; 431, e; 449, (1): B. 171; 172, a, b, Rem. 2; 173, a: B. & M. 230-232; 234; 236: G. 97-100: H. 182, 184, 2, 3, 4, 6; 185: C. 57, 1.

Translate and parse.

Egŏ¹ sum mălus² sĕd tū es bŏnus.
 Egŏ vōs sŭb jŭgum mittam.
 Nōs vōbīs³ ămīci sŭmus.
 Nunciat nōbīs tē vēnisse.
 Egŏ dē prīma vĭgĭlia prŏfectus essem, sī tū vēnisses.
 Nostră consĭlia hostĭbus ēnunciantur.
 Obsĭdes intĕr sēsē⁴ dant.
 Intĕr sē jusjūrandum dant.
 Omnes linguā,6 instĭtūtis,6 lĕgĭbus6 intĕr sē⁵ diffĕrunt (differ).
 Helvētii suīs fīnĭbus7 Germānōs prŏhĭbēbant.
 Caesar suōs mīlĭtes ĭn Galliam mittet sĕd ĭn prōvinciam nostrōs.8
 Tuŭs fīlius ĭn Galliam cĭtĕriōrem ĭter făciet.

Write in Latin.

1. I am a Roman but you are a Gaul. 2. He will announce to you (that) we have come. 3. Your plans will be reported to us. 4. The Helvetii and Sequani will give hostages to each other. 5. He says (that) the Gauls and Germans will give hostages to each other. 6. I shall send my soldiers home but yours into Gaul. 7. You will be friendly to us. 8. I fear that you will not 10 be 11 friendly to us.

Notes.

¹ Form for parsing a pronoun. — **ĕgŏ** is a personal pronoun; declined, ĕgŏ, meī, mthī, mē, mē; Plural, nōs, nostrăm or nostrī, nōbīs, nōs, nōbīs; made in the Nominative Singular, because it is the subject of sūm; rule (see 32).

² See 64.

⁸ See 86.

⁴ inter sese, to each other; lit. among themselves.

⁵ inter sē, from one another.

⁶ See Ln. I., Note 5.

⁷ See Ln. XLIII., Note 6.

⁸ nostros, ours: sc. milites.
9 See 105.

¹⁰ See Ln. XLIX., Note 4.

¹¹ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

LESSON LVIII.

PRONOUNS (continued): DEMONSTRATIVE.

113. Learn the declension and meanings of hic, ille, iste, ipse, is, idem. A. & G. 100-102: A. & S. 180-182: B. 173, b, 1-3: B. & M. 239; 243: G. 101; 102: H. 186, I.-VI.: C. 59; 60.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hōrŭm¹ omnium fortissĭmi sunt Belgae. 2. Hī omnes linguā, instĭtūtis, lĕgĭbus inter sē diffĕrunt. 3. Eōrum² ūnă pars ĭnĭtium căpit ā flūmĭne Rhŏdăno. 4. Mĭnĭme³ ăd eōs mercātōres⁴ saepe commeant. 5. Eī fīliam suam ĭn matrĭmōnium dat. 6. Is sĭbĭ⁵ lēgātiōnem ăd cīvĭtātes suscēpit. 7. Eă res est⁶ Helvētiis ēnunciāta. 8. Eōdĕm die⁻ cŭm duābŭs⁵ lĕgiōnĭbus prŏfĭciscētur ĕt iīs⁶ dŭcĭbus. 9. Ipsĕ¹o ex Helvētiis uxōrem hābet. 10. Ipsī ĭn eōrum¹¹ fīnĭbus bellum gĕrunt. 11. Mīlia¹² passuum triã⁵ āb eōrum castris castra pōnit. 12. Ab iisdĕm¹³ nostra consĭlia hostĭbus ēnunciantur. 13. Ipsĕ dē quarta vĭgĭlia eōdem ĭtĭnĕre¹⁴ ăd eōs contendit ĕquĭtātumque¹⁵ omnem antĕ sē mittit.

Notes.

¹ Demonstrative pronouns are used sometimes substantively and sometimes adjectively: e. g. hi omnes différent, all these differ; ad has suspiciones, to these suspicions. In the former case parse them as nouns; in the latter, as adjectives.

² is is very often used as a *Personal Pronoun* of the *Third Person*, and should then be rendered by the proper case and number of he, she, it; e. g. is sibi suscepit, he took upon himself; ad eos, to them; in eorum finibus, in their territory; éjus milites, his soldiers; ei dat, he gives to him.

³ minime modifies saepe.

⁵ See 67.

⁷ See 111.

⁴ See 32.

⁶ est enunciata = enunciata est.

⁸ See 108.

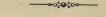
- 9 Is iis used substantively or adjectively?
- 10 ipsě hăbet, he himself has.
- 11 See Note 2.

12 See 109.

13 When a Demonstrative Pronoun is used as a substantive, we may supply in translation the word one, man, men, persons, or soldiers, if masculine; thing or things, if neuter: e. g. hic est fortis, this one is brave, or this man is brave; ab iisdem, by the same persons; idem conantur, they attempt the same thing.

14 eodem itinere, by the same route.

15 See Ln. XXIII., Note 2.



LESSON LIX.

PRONOUNS (continued): RELATIVE.

114. Declension. A. & G. 103; 104, e: A. & S. 184: B. 173, c, Rem. 1: B. & M. 245: G. 103: H. 187, 2: C. 62, 1.

115. Agreement. A. & G. 198: A. & S. 342: B. 278, RULE LIII.: B. & M. 683; 684: G. 615; 616: H. 445, NOTE 1: C. 114, 1.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Aquītānia ăd eam partem Oceăni, quae est ăd Hispāniam, pertinet, Aquitania extends to that PART of the Ocean WHICH is near Spain.
- 2. Flümine Rhēno, qui agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dīvidit, by the river Rhine, which separates the territory of the Helvetii from the Germans.
- 3. Proximique sunt Germānis, quibuscum¹ bellum gerunt, and they are very near to the Germans, with whom they carry on war.

Analyze and parse.

Proximīquĕ sunt Germānis,² quī³ trans Rhēnum incolunt.
 Ad montem Jūram, quī fīnes Sēquănōrum ăb Helvētiis dīvidit.
 Ab Ocĕlo, quŏd est cĭtĕriōris prōvinciae

oppidum⁴ extrēmum. 4. Allobrŏges, quī trans Rhŏdănum vīcos possessiōnesquĕ habēbant, ăd Caesărem vĕniunt. 5. Vŏcat Castĭcum, cūjŭs⁵ păter regnum multos annos⁶ obtĭnuĕrat. 6. Pontem,⁷ quī est ăd Gĕnāvam, jŭbet rescindi.⁸ 7. Undĭque lŏci nātūrā⁹ Helvētii contĭnentur: ūna ex parte¹⁰ flūmĭne¹¹ Rhēno¹² lātissĭmo atquĕ altissĭmo, qui ¹⁶ agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dīvĭdit; altera ¹³ ex parte monte Jūrā altissĭmo, qui est intĕr Sēquănos ĕt Helvētios; tertiā¹⁴ lăcu Lemanno ĕt flūmĭne Rhŏdăno, quī prōvinciam nostram āb Helvētiis dīvĭdit.

Write in Latin.

They are nearest to the Aquitani, who dwell across the Garonne.
 The Aquitani are hemmed in by the Pyrenees, which separate Aquitania from Spain.
 He summons Titus, whose brother held the sovereignty many years.
 The Germans, who had possessions across the Rhine, came to Geneva.
 He came with the very 15 soldiers whom we have seen.
 He comes with the soldiers, of whom he has a very large number.

Notes.

¹ Observe that **cum** is appended to the Ablative of Relative and Personal Pronouns.

² See 86.

³ Form for parsing a relative. — qui is a Relative Pronoun; declined, qui, quae, quöd, cūjus, etc. (give its entire declension); made in the Masculine Plural to agree with its antecedent Germānis (see 115); and in the Nominative, because it is the subject of incolunt (32).

⁴ See 64. ⁵ cūjūs, whose.

⁶ See **93.** ⁷ See **53.**

⁸ See 52. 9 See Ln. XLV., Note 4.

¹⁰ tina ex parte, on one side.
11 See 54.
12 See 25.
13 altera, second.

¹⁴ tertiā, sc. ex parte.

¹⁵ Translate the very by the proper case of ipse.

¹⁶ A. & G. **199**: A. & S. **343** α: B. **286**, d: B. & M. **694**: G. **616**, 3, H.: H. **445**, 4: C. **113**, 5.

LESSON LX.

PRONOUNS (continued): INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE.

116. Learn the declension of the Interrogatives quis and qui; of the Indefinites ăliquis and quis. A. & G. 104, a, e; 105, d: A. & S. 183; 184, a, b: B. 173, d, Rem. 1, e, 1, 3: B. & M. 246; 249-251; 1041, second part: G. 104, Remark; 105: H. 188, I., II., 1, 3; 189; 190, 1, Note 1: C. 62, 2, 4, 5, 13.

a. ăli-quis is used both as a substantive and as an adjective; as a substantive it is declined as follows:

Masculine.			Neuter.	
	[Nom.	ăli-quis, ăli-cūjus, ăli-cuī, ăli-quĕm, ăli-quō,	ăli-quid,	
CTNG	Gen.	ali-cujus,	ăli-cūjŭs,	
DING.	Acc.	ăli-quěm,	ălĭ-cuī, ălĭ-quĭd,	
	Abl.	ălĭ-quō,	ăli-quō.	
	ſ Nom.	ăli-oui.		

Plur. {
 Nom. ăli-quī,
 Gen. ăli-quōrum,
 Dat. ăli-quōvus,
 Acc. ăli-quōs,
 Abl. ăli-quibus.

As an adjective it is declined:

		Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Sing.	Nom. Gen. Dat. Acc. Abl.	ăli-quis and ăli-qui, ăli-eūjūs, ăli-euī, ăli-quem, ăli-quē,	ăli-quă, ăli-cūjŭs, ăli-cuī, ăli-quăm, ăli-quā,	ăli-quŏd, ăli-cūjŭs, ăli-cūi, ăli-quŏd, ăli-quō.
PLUR.	Nom. Gen. Dat. Acc. Abl.	ălĭ-quī, ălĭ-quōrŭm, ălĭ-quĭbŭs, ălĭ-quōs, ălĭ-quĭbŭs,	ăli-quae, ăli-quārum, ăli-quibus, ăli-quās, ăli-quibus,	ălĭ-quă, ălĭ-quōrŭm, ălĭ-quĭbŭs, ălĭ-quă, älĭ-quĭbŭs.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Quis mē vocat? Who calls me?
- 2. Quem vidisti? Whom did you see?
- 3. Quid domum non venerunt? Why have they not come home?
- 4. Alıquem ad me mittent, they will send someBody to me.
- 5. Aliquid accidit, something has happened.
- 6. Sī quid accidat Rōmānis, if anything should happen to the Romans.

Parse the pronouns.

1. Quis vos vocāvit? 2. Quem video? 3. Aliquem vidi.
4. Aliquos ăd eum mīsērunt. 5. Aliquem locum occupāvit.
6. Cum ăliquibus principum vēnit. 7. Sī quis veniat, laeter.
8. Quid non domi fuisti? 9. Quae est mulier quae vēnit?
10. Sī quid mihi accidat, non laetēris. 11. Sī quid Rōmānis accidat, non fortīter pugnent. 12. Aliquem ăd tē mittam. 13. Aliquis dixit hunc esse consulem. 14. Eum hortābor ut cum ăliquibus mīlītum proficiscātur. 15. Vereor nē quis veniat. 16. Vereor nē quid eī accidat. 17. Ut ăliquos virorum mittant, eos hortēmur. 18. Cum ăliquibus principum illē vēnit.

LESSON LXI.

CONJUNCTIONS.

117. A. & G. 25, h; 154, a, h; 208: A. & S. 74 (7); 562; 565; 566: B. 180, the whole; 330, Rule LXXXI.: B. & M. 488-503; 1369: G. 15, IV., 3; 476; 485; 494; 500; 501: H. 309-311; 554, I., 2: C. 100; 257.

VOCABULARY.

aut, conj. or; aut — aut, either — or. et — et, conj. both — and.

ităque, conj. accordingly, therefore.

năm, conj. for. ně, nonně, nům, interrogative particles (see Note 1). něquě, conj. and not; něquě - něquě, neither - nor. postquăm, conj. after, as soon as. for this reason. proptěrea, adv. quamquăm, conj. although. quod, conj. because. sěd, conj. hut.

Translate, and parse 2 the conjunctions.

1. Impěrātor ět³ magnus ět fortis est. 2. Něquě³ magni něquě fortes sunt consules. 3. Dux non magnus est sed fortis. 4. Dumnörigem vöcat eiquě filiam suam in mātrimonium dat. 5. Ităque rem suscēpit. 6. Hōrum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, proptěreā quod ā cultu atque hūmānitāte provinciae longissime⁶ absunt. 7. Helvētii iter per provinciam făciunt, proptěreā quŏd ăliud⁷ ĭter hăbent nullum.⁷ 8. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus8; năm omnis cīvitas Helvētia in quattuor pāgos dīvīsa est. 9. Aut3 suis fīnĭbus9 eos prŏhĭbent, aut ipsī 10 in eōrum fīnibus bellum gĕrunt. 10. Mīles, quamquăm est fortis, non pugnābit. 11. Postquăm Caesar pervēnit, ĭtă respondit. 12. Fortisnë 11 est consul? 13. Nonnë fortes sunt consules? 14. Num fortis est consul? 15. Sī quid hăbērem, 12 id tibi dărem. 16. Nītitur ŭt vincat. 13 17. Nonně consules domum vēnerant? 18. Num Titus lēgātus circum Gĕnāvam hiemāvit?

Notes and Questions.

1 ně is used to ask for information merely; nonně, when the answer yes, and nům, when the answer no is expected or implied; e. g. bönusně est puer? is the boy good? nonně bönus est puer? is not the boy good? i. e. the boy is good, is he not? nům bönus est puer? the boy is not good is he?

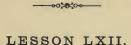
² To parse a conjunction is to tell whether it is coördinate or subordinate; to which subdivision of its class it belongs; what it connects: e. g. in sentence 6, quod is a subordinate conjunction, because it connects a subordinate with a principal clause; causal, because it introduces a reason; it connects the subordinate clause propterea—absunt with the principal clause horum—Belgae.

- 8 When a conjunction is doubled, as et et, aut aut, the first strengthens the union or opposition denoted by the second.
 - 4 See 39 and LN. LVIII., NOTE 2. ⁵ See Ln. LVIII., Note 1.
 - ⁶ See LN. XLII.

7 See 24.

- 8 Use the same word, Tigurinus, in translation.
- 10 What does ipsi emphasize? ⁹ See Ln. XLIII., Note 6.
- 11 The interrogative particle në is appended to the first word of its clause.
- 12 hăbērem, I had.

18 See Ln. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.



CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

118. A good knowledge of the subject treated under the following References will aid materially in translating and understanding the Ablative Absolute, Subjunctive Mood, and Indirect Discourse. A. & G. 171-182, coarse and fine print: A. & S. 309-315: B. 203, a-q; 288, a-f: B. & M. 1399-1401; 1404; 1405; 1407; 1408; 1411; 1413: G. 192; 193; 474, 1-4; 475; 505-508: H. 345-351; 354-361: C. 107; 108.

VOCABULARY.

cīvis, is, m. and f. in-fluŏ, fluĕrĕ, fluxī, fluxum, inter-fício, fícere, feci, fectum, poscŏ, poscĕrĕ, pŏposcī, (no supine) postquăm, conj. re-spondeč, spondērě, spondī, sponsŭm,

citizen. flow into, empty. kill. demand. after, as soon as. reply, answer.

Translate and analyze 1 the following sentences.

1. Ejus rei populus Romanus est testis. 2. Divico respondit² ējus rĕi pōpŭlum Rōmānum essĕ testem. 3. Hic pāgus ūnus Lūcium Cassium consŭlem interfēcerat et ējus exercitum sub jugum mīserat. 4. Postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsides poposcit. 5. Flumen³ est Arar, quod in Rhodanum

influit. 6. Caesar ā lăcu Lemanno, qui ĭn flūmen Rhŏdănum influit, ad montem Jūram, qui fines Sēquanorum ab Helvētiis dīvidit, fossam perdūcit. 7. Quis4 es? Cīvis Rōmānus sum. 8. Rělinquebatur ūna per Sequanos via, qua propter angustias īre (to go) non poterant. 9. Ob eas causas eī mūnītioni,5 quam fēcerat, Titum Labienum lēgātum praefēcit. 10. Vēni ŭt të videam.

Write in Latin.

1. Did the enemy send our army under the yoke? 2. They will not send us home will they⁶? 3. Did he not demand hostages as soon as he arrived? 4. Who are those men? They are Roman citizens. 5. Who has come to see us? 6. The Rhone is a river which empties into the sea. 7. One way is left through the Alps by which we shall not be able to march on account of the enemy. 8. We shall either keep the Gauls from our territory or carry on war with them. 9. This man is both great and good. 10. We shall march through Gaul because we have no other way.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ See Ln. XXXVI., Examples and Notes.
- ² What is the object of respondit?
- 8 See 64.
 - 4 See 64; what is the subject of es?
- 5 See 67. ⁶ See Ln. LXI., Note 1.

LESSON LXIII.

PARTICIPLES.

119. Definition. A. & G. 25, e; 289: A. & S. 542: B. 53, d: B. & M. 265, last clause: H. 548: C. 65, 4.

120. Distinctions of Tense. A. & G. 290: A. & S. 543-545: B. 323, Rule LXXV.; B. & M. 1343: G. 278; 279: H. 550: C. 249.

121. Used for a Subordinate Clause. A. & G. 292: A. & S. 547: B. 318: B. & M. 1350: G. 667-671: H. 549, 1-5: C. 250.

EXAMPLES.

- Sēsē omnes flentes Caesări ăd pědes projecerunt, all WEEPING threw themselves down at Caesar's feet.
- 2. Liscus multos dies morātus profectus est, Liscus having delayed many days set out; or, Liscus, after he had delayed many days, set out.
- 3. Caesar eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēpit, Caesar HAVING BEEN INFLUENCED by their entreaties undertook the war; or, Caesar, BECAUSE HE HAD BEEN INFLUENCED by their entreaties, undertook the war.
- 4. Helvētii ējus adventu commōti lēgātos mittunt, the Helvētii BECAUSE DISTURBED (or, BECAUSE THEY HAVE BEEN DISTURBED) by his arrival send legates.

VOCABULARY.

ad-dūcě, dūcěrě, duxī, ductům, lead to, influence.
fleč, flērě, flēvi, flētům, weep.
in-dūcě, dūcěrě, duxī, ductům, lead into, induce.
pětě, pětěrě, pětīvī and pětiī, pětītům, beseech, ask, beg for.
prō-jicič, jicěrě, jēcī, jectům, throw forward; sē prōjicěrě, to throw one's self down.

Analyze, and parse the participles.

Omnes flentes¹ pācem pětiērunt.
 Mŭliëres flentes vĭros² implōrābant.
 Belgae spectant ĭn ŏrientem sōlem.
 Hostes ĭn nostros vĕnientes tēla conjĭciēbant.
 Mīlĭtes sēsē Tĭto³ ăd pĕdes prōjĭcient.
 Helvētii his rēbus⁴ adducti⁵ cŭm proxĭmis cīvĭtātĭbus pācem confirmant.
 Liscus ōrātiōne Caesăris adductus lŏcūtus est.
 Hac ōrātiōne adducti intĕr sē⁶ jusjūrandum dant.
 Is⁵ regni cŭpĭdĭtāte in-

ductus conjūrātionem nobilitātis fēcit. 10. Sēquăni paucos dies morāti ăd⁸ Genāvam profecti sunt. 11. Helvētii omnium rērum inopiā adducti lēgātos ăd eum⁷ mīsērunt. 12. Caesar dē tertia vigilia profectus ăd⁹ Genāvam pervēnit.

Write in Latin.

1. The soldiers weeping throw themselves down at the feet of Cassius. 2. Our (soldiers) hurl weapons against the advancing enemy. 3. The Gauls, after they had delayed a few days, set out towards Rome. 4. Ariovistus, because he had been disturbed by Caesar's arrival, sent legates to him. 5. The Germans having delayed a few days came across the Rhine. 6. The Gauls, because disturbed by Caesar's arrival, send legates to him.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ Parse a participle like an adjective (Ln. VI., Note 1), giving in addition the principal parts of its verb and the different participles formed from the verb.
 - ² viros, husbands.
- 8 See 39; translate as if it were a Genitive.

- 4 See 54.
- ⁵ Imitate the Examples in translating the participles.
- ⁶ See Ln. LVII., Note 4. ⁷ See Ln. LVIII., Note 2.
- 8 ad, towards, for.
- ⁹ ăd, in the vicinity of.
- ¹⁰ What participles has a transitive verb? See Ln. XXXIII., Note 5.

LESSON LXIV.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

122. A. & G. 255 and Note: A. & S. 422 d: B. 264, Rule XLIX., a-c: B. & M. 964-966; G. 408; 409: H. 431, 1, 2, 4: C. 187, 1, 2, 3.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Marco Messālā et Marco Pīsone consultibus, Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso consuls; or better, in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso.
- 2. Hoc responso dăto discessit,
 - a. this reply having been given
 - b. when this reply had been given
 - c. having given this reply
 - d. after giving this reply
 - e. after he had given this reply

he departed.

VOCABULARY.

con-vertő, vertěre, vertī, versům, dis-cēdő, cēděrě, cessī, cessům, ĭbī, adv. rě-linquő, linquěrě, līquī, lictům, responsům, ī, n. rě-vertor, vertī, versůs sům,

turn about, change. depart. there. leave behind, leave. answer, reply. return.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hāc ōrātiōne¹ hābǐtā² Caesar concĭlium dīmīsit. 2. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Divitiāco hābǐtā omnes auxīlium pĕtiērunt. 3. Hāc ōrātiōne hābǐtā conversae sunt omnium mentes. 4. Convŏcātis eōrum³ princĭpĭbus Caesar grăvĭter⁴ eos accūsat. 5. Marco Messālā ĕt Marco Pīsōne consŭlĭbus conjūrātiōnem nōbĭlĭtātis fēcit. 6. Ibĭ Centrōnes⁵ lŏcis sŭpĕriōrĭbus occŭpātis ĭtĭnĕre⁶ exercĭtum prŏhĭbēre cōnantur. 7. Mūnītis castris duas ĭbĭ lĕgiōnes rĕlīquit ĕt partem auxīliōrum. 8. Hōc proelio trans Rhēnum nunciāto Suēvi dŏmum⁵ rĕverti coepērunt (began). 9. Convŏcātis eōrum princĭpĭbus, quōrum⁵ magnam cōpiam ĭn castris hābēbat, grāvĭter eos accūsat. 10. Hōc proelio trans Rhēnum nunciāto Suēvi, qui ād rīpas Rhēni vēnĕrant, dŏmum rĕverti coepērunt.

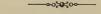
Write in Latin.

1. When this speech had been delivered by Caesar all begged for peace. 2. After giving this reply all departed. 3. He came to Rome in the consulship of Titus and Cassius. 4. Having fortified the camp he set out with a part of the auxiliaries. 5. After this battle had been reported across the Rhone the Sequani began to return home.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ The learner should exercise skill and taste in translating the Ablative Absolute; in analyzing tell what relation it bears to the rest of the sentence.
 - ² hăbĭtā, from hăbĕo, signifying hold, deliver, make.
 - ⁸ See Ln. LVIII., Note 2.
- 4 From what adjective is graviter derived? What is the Stem of the adjective? What is the ending of the adverb? See Ln. XLII.
 - ⁵ See General Vocabulary.
- ⁶ See Ln. XLIII., Note 6.

- 7 See 105.
- ⁸ What is the gender and number of quōrum? Why? (115) In what case is it? Why? (40)
 - 9 for belongs to the verb; peace must be rendered by the Accusative.



LESSON LXV.

IRREGULAR VERBS: FERO.

123. Learn the entire conjugation of fĕrŏ. A. & G. 139: A. & S. 245: B. 109, IV.: B. & M. 422-424: G. 186: H. 292: C. 85, 1.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis of each verb.

1. Dux suis ¹ auxĭlium fert. 2. Auxĭlium mīlĭtĭbus ²ā duce fertur. 3. Sī dux suis auxĭlium ferat, ³ laetentur. ³ 4. Sī auxĭlium mīlĭtībus ā duce feratur, ³ laetentur. ³ 5. Ii⁴ suis auxĭlium ferre non poterant. 6. Ferte, mīlĭtes, vestris ¹ auxĭ-

lium. 7. Populus Romanus diū injūrias tulit. 8. Injūriae ā pŏpŭlo Rōmāno diū lātae sunt. 9. Pŏpŭlum Rōmānum hortātus est ŭt⁵ diū injūrias ferrent.⁵ 10. Caesar dixĭt pŏpŭ-lum Rōmānum diū injūrias tŭlissě. 11. Nŭmĕrus eōrum,⁴ qui6 arma fĕrēbant, magnus fuit. 12. Numĕrus eorum, ā quibus arma ferebantur, magnus fuit. 13. Numerus eorum, qui arma ferre poterant, magnus fuit. 14. Numerus eorum, a quibus arma ferrī pŏtĕrant,7 parvus fuit. 15. Sī Gallis auxĭlium ferrēs, Galli vincerent. 16. Sī quis 8 Romānis auxīlium tŭlisset, vicissent.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The Plural Masculine of Possessive Pronouns is often used alone where in translation some such word as men, soldiers, friends, may be supplied; the Plural Neuter, where we may supply things, possessions.

² See 39.

8 See Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 4.

⁴ See Ln. LVIII., Note 2.

⁵ See Ln. XXXVIII., Note 3.

6 See 115.

⁷ See Ln. XLV., Note 8.

8 What is quis when immediately preceded by si, nisi, ne, or num? How is it declined? See LN. LX.

LESSON LXVI.

00:00

COMPOUNDS OF FERO. - ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

124. Ablative of Specification. A. & G. 253: A. & S. 412: B. 261, RULE XLVI.: B. & M. 889: G. 398: H. 424: C. 180. This answers the question In what respect?

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Virtûte praecêdunt, they excel IN COURAGE.
- 2. Numero ad duodecim, about twelve in number.

mittit.

VOCABULARY.

af-fěrő, af-ferrě, at-tŭlī, al-lātŭm,1 bring to, carry to, offer. con-fĕrŏ, con-ferrĕ, con-tŭlī, col-lātŭm, bring together, carry together, collect. dif-fero, dif-ferre, dis-tuli, di-latum, carry different ways; differ. bring into, bring upon, in-fěrč, in-ferrě, in-tŭlī, il-lātŭm, make upon. rě-fěrő, rě-ferrě, rě-tůlī, rě-lātům, bring back, carry back,

Analyze and parse.

1. Hi omnes linguā,² instĭtūtis,² lēgĭbus² intĕr sē diffērunt.

2. Oppĭda sua omnia nŭmĕro² ăd duŏdĕcim³ incendunt.

3. Eō⁴ circĭtĕr⁵ hŏmĭnum nŭmĕro sēdĕcim mīlia³ mīsit.

4. Helvētii rĕlĭquos Gallos virtūte praecēdunt.

5. Helvētii tōti Galliae⁶ bellum infĕrēbant.

6. Pars cīvĭtātis Helvētiie insignem călămĭtātem pŏpŭlo Rōmāno intŭlĕrat.

7. Helvētii mĭnus făcĭle fīnĭtĭmis bellum inferrĕ pŏtĕrant.

8. Obsĭdes, arma, servi confĕruntur.

9. Aedui dixērunt frūmentum conferri.

10. Caesar sarcĭnas¹o in ūnum lŏcum conferri jussit.

11. Helvētii cŭm omnĭbus suis carris sĕcūti¹l impĕdīmenta¹o

ĭn ūnum lŏcum contŭlērunt.

12. His responsis¹² ăd Cae-

Write in Latin.

sărem relatis iterum ad eum Caesar legatos cum his mandatis

1. All differed from one another in language and laws.
2. They will burn their cities, about five in number.
3. The Romans will make war upon the Gauls.
4. I fear that the Romans will make war upon the Gauls.
5. Let was make war upon both the Germans and the Belgae.
6. The baggage will be collected into one place.
7. The Gauls, having followed with all their horses, collected the wagons.

Notes and Questions.

1 Accent the compounds of fero correctly: affero, afferre, attuli, allatum.

² See 124.

8 See 108.

4 eō is an adverb; see GEN. Vy.

⁵ circiter modifies the numeral.

6 See 67.

pŏtĕrant, could.
 jussit, from jŭbeo.

⁹ See 52.

⁹ jussit, from jübeo.

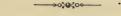
¹⁰ What is the difference between sarcinae and impëdimenta? See General Vocabulary under sarcina and impëdimentum.

11 secuti from sequor; where is it made?

12 See 122.

18 See Ln. XLVI., Note 4.

14 See Ln. XXIX., Ex. 7.



LESSON LXVII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (continued): VOLO AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

125. Learn the conjugation and meanings of vŏlŏ, nōlŏ, mālŏ. A. & G. 138: A. & S. 242-244: B. 109, VI.: B. & M. 417-419: G. 189: H. 293: C. 85, 3, 4, 5.

VOCABULARY.

ā-vertő, vertěrě, vertī, versŭm, mālŏ, mallě, māluī, nōlŏ, nollě, nōluī, undě, adv. văcŏ, ārě, āvī, ātŭm, vŏlŏ, vellě, vŏluī,

turn away.
be more willing.
be unwilling, not wish.
from which place, whence.
be unoccupied.
be willing, wish.

Conjugate and give a synopsis of the verbs.

Aeduos¹ flāgĭtāre² Tĭtus frūmentum¹ vult.
 Helvētiis³ bellum inferre völumus.
 Galli fīnĭtĭmis bellum inferre völuerant.
 Sī lēgātus pugnāre velĭt, hostes fugiant.
 Num⁴ profĭcisci dē tertia vigĭlia vultĭs?
 Dumnorix quam⁵ plūrīmas cīvĭtātes habēre volēbat.
 Consul impēdīmenta⁶ ĭn ūnum locum conferri vult.
 Sī vīs mē⁶ flēre.

9. Montem ā Cassio occupāri volut. 10. Mons, quem⁶ ā Lābieno occupāri voluit, ab hostibus tenetur. 11. Dīcit velle sēsē6 dē rēpublica7 cum eo loqui. 12. Caesar ab Helvētiis discēděre² nölēbăt. 13. Nöluĭt eum lŏcum văcāre Liscus. 14. Dixit Caesărem ăb Helvētiis discēděre² nollě. 15. Noluït eum löcum, undě Helvētii discessěrant, văcāre. 16. Vir injūrias diū ferre nolet. 17. Sī lēgātus iter făcere nolit, mīlites laetentur. 18. Věreor nē8 dux suis auxilium ferre nölit.8 19. Iter ăb Arăre Helvētii āvertĕrant ā quĭbus discēdĕre nolebăt. 20. Pugnāre2 Helvētii mālunt quăm fugere.2 21. Nonně māvīs tuis auxĭlium ferre quam fugere? 22. Omnes virtūte 10 praecēděre māvult quăm essě consul. 23. Gallis prodesse quam bellum inferre maluit. 24. Exercitui praeesse mālĕt quăm dŏmi¹¹ mănēre.

Write in Latin.

1. You do not wish to burn the town, do you⁴? 2. They will wish to make war upon the Romans.³ 3. I fear that the soldiers will not be willing 8 to collect the baggage. 4. Let us be willing to follow with all our baggage. 5. If Caesar had been willing to fight, the soldiers would not have fled. 6. Titus does not wish this place to be unoccupied. 7. He will be unwilling to bring aid to his 9 (friends). 8. You had been unwilling to make war upon (your) neighbors. 9. He will be more willing to fight than to flee. 10. The man was more willing to excel all in valor 10 than to be rich.

Notes.

¹ See 71.

² See A. & G. 271, a: A. & S. 532: B. 315, f, 3: B. & M. 1152; 1153: G. 424: H. 533: C. 241.

⁸ See 67.

⁵ See Ln. XLII., Note 7.

⁷ See 110.

⁹ See Ln. LXV., Note 1.

¹¹ See 106.

⁴ See LN. LXI., NOTE 1.

⁶ See 53.

⁸ See Ln. XLVI., Note 4.

¹⁰ See 124.

LESSON LXVIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (continued): EO AND FIO.

126. Learn the conjugation and meanings of eŏ and fiŏ. A. & G. 141; 142: A. & S. 246; 248, a: B. 109, II., V.: B. & M. 413-415; 426-429: G. 135; 188, Remark: H. 294; 295, 1, 3: C. 85, 2, 7.

EXAMPLES.

- Dē Caesăris adventu certior factus est, he was informed of Caesar's arrival.
- 2. Caesar certior factus est hostes castra pŏsuisse, Caesar was informed that the enemy had pitched a camp.
- 3. Caesărem certiorem faciunt hostes transire, they inform Caesar that the enemy is crossing.

VOCABULARY.

go.

certus, ă, ŭm,

certain, sure; certior fieri, to be informed; lit., to be made more certain.

eŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ĭtŭm, ex-eŏ, īrĕ, ĭī, ĭtŭm,

go out, go forth, depart. be made, become, occur.

fīŏ, fĭĕrī, factŭs sŭm, trans-eŏ, īrĕ, ĭī, ĭtŭm,

go across, cross.

Conjugate the verbs and parse.

1. Dŏmum¹ eunt; Rōmam ībo; Bibracte¹ eāmŭs.² 2. Pĕr angustias ībāmŭs; pĕr Gallōrum fīnes īvērunt. 3. I,³ mīles, dŏmum; ītĕ, pueri, dŏmum. 4. Hostes pĕr nostram prōvinciam īvĕrant. 5. Lēgātus Bibracte īrĕ contendit. 6. Caesar cŭm his quinque lĕgiōnĭbus īrĕ⁴ contendit. 7. In eam partem Galliae ĭtūrōs⁵ essĕ Helvētios dixit. 8. Proptĕr angustias īrĕ⁴ nōn pŏtĕrant. 9. Helvētii dē fīnĭbus suis cŭm omnĭbus cōpiis exībant. 10. Nītuntur ŭt ē fīnĭbus exeant.⁶ 11. Magnus nŭmĕrus eōrum⁵ dŏmo³ exībĭt. 12. Hic

pāgus ūnus dŏmo patrum nostrōrum mĕmŏriā 9 exiĕrăt. 16 13. Flūmen Helvētii rătĭbus 10 transībant. 14. Sī flūmen transeant, 11 eos vincāmus. 15. Sī hostes Rhŏdănum transīrē cōnentur, prŏhĭbeāmus. 16. Boii 12 trans Rhēnum incŏluĕrant ĕt ĭn agrum Norĭcum 12 transiĕrant. 17. Undĭquĕ ūno tempŏre ĭn hostes impĕtus fīēbāt. 18. His rēbus 13 fīēbāt. 19. Dē ējus 7 adventu Helvētii certiōres facti sunt. 20. Caesar eōdem die āb explōrātōrībus certior factŭs suas cōpias praemittĕre vŏlēbat. 21. Duo vĭri consŭles 14 factī ĕrunt. 22. Pĕr explōrātōres Caesar certior factŭs est Sēquănos pĕr prōvinciam ĭter fēcissĕ. 15

Notes and Questions.

- 1 What question do domum and Bibracte answer? See 105, a.
- ² See Ln. XXIX., Ex. 7. ⁸ In what is the Imperative used? (47)
- ⁴ See 69. ⁵ Why is ituros in the Acc. Plural?
- ⁶ How is the Subjunctive with **ŭt** to be translated after verbs of *striving* and *endeavoring*?
 - ⁷ See Ln. LVIII., Note 2.
 - 8 What question does domo answer?
 - ⁹ See 111.
- 10 rătis, is, f. raft.12 See Gen. Vy.
- ¹¹ See Ln. XXIX., Ex. 1.
- 14 See 64.

18 See 79.15 See Ex. 2.

16 exiĕrăt = exivĕrăt.

----obso-----

LESSON LXIX.

DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

127. Defective Verbs. A. & G. 143, a-c, Note: A. & S. 249 (1)-(3): B. 111, b, Rem. 1, 2: B. & M. 434-437: G. 190, 5: H. 297, I., 2: C. 86, 5, 6.

128. Impersonal Verbs. A. & G. 145: A. & S. 250: B. 112; 113: B. & M. 451; 452; 454: G. 199: H. 298; 299: C. 87.

129. Infinitive as Subject. A. & G. 270: A. & S. 531: B. 315, a, b: B. & M. 1147: G. 423: H. 538: C. 236, I.

EXAMPLES.

- Perfăcile est impĕrio pŏtīri (129), it is very easy to get possession of the government.
- 2. Mihi ire (129) licet, it is permitted me to go; or, I may go.
- 3. Mihi ire licuit, it was permitted me to go; or, I might have gone.
- 4. Rŏgat ŭt ĭd sĭbi făcĕre lĭceat, he asks that it be permitted him TO DO this; better, he asks permission to do this.
- 5. Rögābat ŭt id sibi făcĕre licēret, he was asking that it be permitted him to do this; or, permission to do this.
- 6. Me îre (129) ŏportet, it is necessary that I should go; or, I ought to go.
- Me ire ŏportuit, it was necessary that I should go; or, I ought to have gone.
- 8. Dicit me îre ŏportēre, he says it is necessary that I should go; or, he says that I ought to go.

Analyze and parse.

1. Měmĭnērunt,¹ ōdērunt. 2. Měmĭněram Títum, vīděram Cassium. 3. Měmento věnīre²; dīcit sē měmĭnisse. 4. Liscus dixit Dumnŏrĭgem ōdisse Caesărem ět Rōmānos. 5. Et tē ět illum³ ōdĕrāmus. 6. Něquě⁴ mē něquě eum ōdit. 7. Divitiăcus multis cům lacrĭmis Caesărem obsĕcrāre⁵ coepit. 8. Suēvi, qui⁶ ăd rīpas Rhēni vēněrant, dŏmum rĕverti coepērunt. 9. Omnes mīlĭtes Rhŏdănum transīre coepērunt. 10. Frūmentum² conferri⁶ ŏportet. 11. Nos² Rhēnum transīre ŏportuit. 9 12. Dīcit illum ăd sē věnīre ŏportēre.¹0 13. Caesărem dē ējus adventu certiōrem¹¹ fĭĕri ŏportuit. 14. Rŏgāvērunt ut sĭbi¹² lĭcēret concĭlium tōtīus Galliae convŏcāre. 15. Rogāvit ut sĭbi īre lĭcēret. 16. Tĭbi eo die īre lĭcēbit. 17. Perfăcĭle est tōtīus Galliae impĕrio pŏtīri. 18. Tĭbi Caesărem certiōrem făcĕre dē meo adventu lĭcet.¹³ 19. Tĭbi dŏmum īre lĭcuit.¹⁴

Write in Latin.

1. We shall go home. 2. Are you going home? 3. You ought to go home. 4. We ought to have gone home. 5. You can go to Geneva; you may go to Geneva; you ought to go to Geneva. 6. You could have gone to Bibracte; you might have gone to Bibracte; you ought to have gone to Bibracte. 7. You are not going to Rome are you? 8. Are you not going to Rome? 9. Who will go home with me? 10. He says that corn ought to be collected. 11. We shall ask that it be permitted us to go home. 12. Let us go home.

Notes and Questions.

- 1 What is a Defective Verb? What is an Impersonal Verb?
- ² See 52.
- 3 illum, that one; see LN. LVIII., Notes 1 and 13.
- 4 See LN. LXI., NOTE 3.
- 5 See 69.
- ⁶ Where is qui made and why?
- ⁷ See **53**.

8 See 129.

- ⁹ See Example 7.
- ¹⁰ In this sentence illum is the subject of věnire; illum věnire, the subject of ŏportēre; illum ŏportēre, the object of dicit.
 - 11 See Ln. LXVIII., Ex. 1.
 - 12 How does this sibi differ from the sibi in sentence 15?
 - 18 What is the subject of licet?
- 14 See EXAMPLE 3.



LESSON LXX.

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — DATIVE OF AGENT.

130. Periphrastic Conjugations. A. & G. 109, a; 129: A. & S. 229 (1), (2): B. 94, a, b: B. & M. 328; 329: G. 149; 150; 239; 243: H. 233; 234: C. 82.

131. Dative of Agent. A. & G. 232: A. & S. 383: B. 248, Rule XXXVI.: B. & M. 847: G. 353: H. 388: C. 157.

EXAMPLES.

- Doctūrus sŭm, I am about to teach; I intend to teach; I am to teach.
- 2. Doctūrus ĕrat (fuit), he was about to teach; he was intending to teach; he was to teach.
- 3. Audiendi sumus, we must be heard; we ought to be heard.
- 4. Tibi (131) audiendi sumus, you must hear us; you ought to hear us.
- 5. Agri consuli vastandi ĕrant (fuērunt), the consul had to lay waste the fields.
- 6. Vexillum proponendum erat, the flag had to be displayed.
- 7. Oppidum oppugnandum erit, the town will have to be stormed.
- 8. Oppidum võbis müniendum ĕrit, you will have to fortify the town.

Translate1 and parse.

1. Obsides tibi dătūrus sum.² 2. Caesar mihi obsides dătūrus fuit. 3. Ariovistus Romanos victūrus fuit. 4. Hostes ăd rīpas Rhēni ĭtūri sunt. 5. Nunciat hostes ăd rīpas Rhēni ĭtūros essĕ. 6. Frūmentum³ Aeduos³ flāgĭtātūrus lēgātus ĕrat. 7. Dŏmum ĭtūri sŭmus. 8. Patriae⁴ prōfŭtūri estis. 9. Nōbis bellum gerendum erit. 10. Duo consules creandi sunt. 11. In hostes věnientes tēla nobis conjicienda erant. 12. Oppĭdum lēgāto expugnandum ĕrit. 13. Pĕr Alpes mīlĭtĭbus iter faciendum erit. 14. Frümentum Aeduis dandum est.6 15. Urbs dēlenda est. 16. Caesări ĭn Galliam mātūrandum est.⁷ 17. Caesar mātūrandum sĭbi essĕ existĭmāvit. 18. Dē ējus adventu Caesar certior⁸ făciendus est. 19. Caesări omnia ūno tempore ĕrant ăgenda: vexillum proponendum,9 quod 10 ĕrat insigne, quum ăd arma concurri13 oporteret11; signum tuba dandum9; ab opere revocandi12 milites; qui16 paulo longius 14 aggeris petendi causā 15 processerant arcessendi 12; ăcies instruenda,9 mīlĭtes cŏhortandi.12

Write in Latin.

1. I intend to write a letter. 2. I was intending to go to Bibracte. 3. The lieutenant was to storm the town. 4. My brother is about to go to the city. 5. The Gauls intend to carry on war with their neighbors. 6. The boys must hasten home. 7. We must carry on war with our neighbors. 8. You will have to fortify the town. 9. We shall have to exhort the soldiers. 10. The consul had to give the signal. 11. The city will have to be fortified. 12. The town had to be stormed.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ Imitate the Examples in translation.
- ² Give the Synopsis and Conjugation of each Periphrastic form.
- 8 See 71.

- 4 See 67.
- ⁵ See 131 and Example 8; what is the literal translation?
- 6 What are the different translations of this sentence? See 39 and 131.
- ⁷ mātūrandum est has no *personal* subject; verbs which do not take a Direct Object in the Active Voice have only the *impersonal* construction in the Passive.
 - ⁸ See Ln. LXVIII., EXAMPLE 1.
- ⁹ Supply erat.
- 10 Why is quod in the Neuter Singular?
- ¹¹ See Ln. LXIX., Examples 6 and 7; what is the subject of öporteret? Translate by the Indicative.
 - 12 Supply ĕrant.

- 13 concurri, to rush.
- 14 paulo longius, a little too far.
- 15 aggeris causa, for the purpose of seeking materials for a mound.
- ¹⁶ The antecedent of qui is ii, which is the subject of arcessendi (ĕrant).

LESSON LXXI.

USE OF THE DATIVE.

132. Dative with Intransitive Verbs. A. & G. 226; 227: A. & S. 374 (1); 376: B. 241, Rule XXIX.; 244, Rule XXXII.: B. & M. 824; 831: G 345: H. 385, I., II., and Note 3: C. 153; 155.

EXAMPLES.

- Cīvĭtāti (132) persuāsit ŭt exīrent,¹ he persuaded the state to go forth.
- 2. Novis rebus studebat, he was eager for a revolution; lit., for new things.
- 3. Allobrogibus imperavit, he gave orders to the Allobroges.
- 4. Plăcuit ei (132) ut mitteret, it pleased HIM to send.
- 5. Sī Allobrogibus satisfaciat, if he should give satisfaction to the Allobroges.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hoc² făcĭlius eis persuāsit, quŏd³ undĭquĕ lŏci nātūrā⁴ Helvētii contĭnentur. 2. Is, Marco Messāla ĕt Marco Pisōne consŭlĭbus,⁵ regni cŭpĭdĭtāte inductus⁶ conjūrātiōnem nōbĭlĭtātis fēcit ĕt cīvĭtāti²⁰ persuāsit, ŭt dē fīnĭbus suis cŭm omnĭbus cōpiis exīrent.¹ 3. Persuādent Raurăcis ĕt Tulingis, fīnĭtĭmis,⁻ ŭti, eōdem ūsi⁶ consĭlio,⁰ oppĭdis⁶ suis vīcisquĕ exustis,¹⁰ ūnā cŭm iis prŏfĭciscantur.¹ 4. Orgētŏrix cŭpĭdĭtāte regni adductus⁶ nŏvis rēbus¹¹ stŭdēbat. 5. Liscus dixit Dumnorĭgem făvēre Helvētiis sĕd ōdisse¹² Caesărem ĕt Rōmānos. 6. Caesar Allobrŏgĭbus impĕrāvit ŭt iis frūmenti cōpiam făcĕrent.¹ 7. Quamobrem plăcuit¹³ ei ŭt ăd Ariovistum lēgātos mittĕret. 8. Huic lĕgiōni Caesar indulsĕrat praecĭpuē. 9. Sī¹⁴ Aeduis dē¹⁵ injūriis, quas ipsis¹⁶ sociisquĕ eōrum¹¹⁻ intŭlĕrint,¹⁶ ĭtĕm sī Allobrŏgĭbus sătisfăciant, cŭm iis pācem făciat.

Write in Latin.

1. We persuaded the men to go¹ forth. 2. They persuaded the Allobroges to go to Rome. 3. We shall persuade the Helvetii more easily for this reason,² because they are hemmed in on all sides by mountains. 4. We shall endeavor to persuade (our) neighbors to adopt⁸ the same plan, burn up¹0 their houses and set out¹ in company with us.

5. We shall favor neither the enemy nor our friends. 6. He will give satisfaction to the citizens for 15 the wrongs which he has brought upon them 16 and their 17 allies. 7. We can 19 not give you satisfaction for all the wrongs which we have brought upon you.

Notes and Questions.

- 1 See Ln. XXXVIII., Note 3.
- ² See 79.
- 3 quod is a conjunction; what kind of a clause does it introduce?
- 4 See Ln. XLV., Note 4 and 79.
- ⁵ See 122.
- 6 See Ln. LXIII., EXAMPLES.
- 7 See 25. 8 usi from utor, to adopt; lit., having adopted, made use of.
- 9 See 104.
- 10 oppidis exustis, to burn up their towns, etc.; lit., their towns, etc. having been burned up. (122)
 - 11 See Ex. 2.
 - 12 What kind of a verb is odisse? (127)
 - 13 placuit is an impersonal verb in this sentence; what is its subject?
 - 14 Sc. sătisfăciant.

15 de, for.

16 See 67.

- 17 See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.
- 18 intulerint from infero; render it by the Perfect Indicative.
- 19 See Ln. XXVIII., Ex. 1.
- 20 civitati, state, is used here for civibus, citizens; hence the dependent clause has exirent instead of exiret.

-00;000-

LESSON LXXII.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

133. Ablative with Comparatives. A. & G. 247: A. & S. 416: B. 261, RULE XLVI., c: B. & M. 895: G. 399: H. 417: C. 174.

134. Subjunctive expressing a Wish or Command. A. & G. 266; 267: A. & S. 472; 473, a: B. 309, Rule LXVIII.: B. & M. 1193; 1197: G. 247; 249; 253; 256: H. 483; 484, I., II., IV.: C. 203, 1 and note.

EXAMPLES.

- Non amplius milibus (133) passuum oetodeeim aberat, he was not more than eighteen miles distant.
- 2. Nihil virtūte (133) mělius est, nothing is better than virtue.
- 3. Cives mei sint (134) beāti, MAY my fellow-citizens BE happy.
- 4. Amēmus (134) pătriam, let us love our country.
- 5. Věniat (134), LET HIM COME.
- 6. Në hodie proficiscamur (134), let us not set out to-day.

Analyze and parse.

1. Quid virtūte mělius est? 2. Scīmus sõlem mājorem esse terrā. 3. Amīcitia, quā 1 nihil melius habemus, nobis 2 ā dis³ immortālĭbus dăta est. 4. Haec⁴ sunt dulciōra melle. 5. Mīlītes fortiores sunt imperātore. 6. Caesar ab oppido non amplius mīlībus passuum duobus castra posuit. 7. Ab urbe non amplius mīlibus passuum quinque castra ponēmus. 8. Ipse ăb hostium castris non longius mille⁵ ĕt quingentis passĭbus ăberat. 9. Quod a Bibracte, oppido Aeduorum longe maximo ět copiosissimo, non amplius milibus passuum octoděcim ăberat, rei frumentariae prospiciendum6 existimavit:7 iter8 ăb Helvētiis āvertit āc Bibracte īre contendit. 10. Mīlites veniant. 11. Sītis beāti. 12. Hos latrones interficiāmus. 13. Caesărem dē ējus adventu certiorem făciāmus. 14. Ad Bibracte dē quarta vigilia nē pròficiscāmur. 15. Lēgātus certior fīat de meo consilio. 16. Iter celerius per Galliam făciamus. 17. Cīvĭtāti¹⁰ persuādeāmus ŭt exeant.¹¹ 18. Nŏvis rēbus nē studeāmus. 19. Hostibus patriae nē faveāmus. 20. Aeduis dē injūriis, quas eōrum sŏciis 12 intŭlĭmus, sătisfaciāmus.

Write in Latin.

1. This man is bigger than Caesar. 2. Nothing is better than friendship. 3. The lieutenant is braver than the general. 4. We are not more than twenty miles from the city.

5. May we be brave. 6. Let us set out in the third watch. 7. Let us look out for supplies. 8. Let us not kill these men. 9. Let us persuade the citizens to go forth. 10. May it please 13 you to send ambassadors to Caesar. 11. Let the enemy come. 12. Let us make haste to go home.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 133.

² See 39.

8 See 20.

- ⁴ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13.
- ⁵ Is mille in this sentence an adjective or substantive? See 108.

6 Sc. essě. See 130.

- 7 rei existimavit, he thought that he ought to look out for supplies.
- 8 Introduce the translation of this clause with accordingly.

9 See EXAMPLE 3.

10 See 132.

11 See LN. LXXI., NOTE 20. 18 See Ln. LXXI., Example 4. 12 See 67.

LESSON LXXIII.

005000

OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. - SUBJUNCTIVE IN FINAL TENSES CLAUSES.

135. Sequence of Tenses. A. & G. 283-286: A. & S. 524-526: B. 61; 311, RULE LXX.: B. & M. 1163; 1164: G. 216; 510: H. 198; 490-493: C. 234.

136. Subjunctive of Purpose. A. & G. 317, REMARK: A. & S. 482: B. 295, RULE LVIII.; 299, RULE LXI.: B. & M. 1205; 1207: G. 543-546; 632: H. 497, I., II.: C. 206. This answers such questions as For what purpose? With what design? With what aim? To what end? Why? What?

EXAMPLES.

he comes

1. Věnit 2. Věniet ŭt videat,

he will come he has come

TO SEE, IN ORDER TO SEE, THAT HE MAY SEE.

4. Vēněrit

he will have com

- he was coming 1 to see, IN ORDER 5. Věniebat ŭt videret, he came 6. Vēnit TO SEE, THAT HE 7 Vēněrat
- he had come
- 8. Ut consequi posset pontem fecit, he made a bridge that he MIGHT BE ABLE to pursue.
- 9. Postulavit ne Aeduis bellum inferret, he demanded that he SHOULD NOT MAKE war UPON the Aedui.
- 10. Equitatum qui sustineret impetum misit, he sent cavalru to WITHSTAND the attack.
- 11. Në offendëret vërëbatur, he was fearing that he should offend.
- 12. Ut socii venirent verebatur, he was fearing that the allies would NOT come.

Analyze and parse.

1. Allobrogibus imperavit, ut iis frumenti copiam făcerent. 2. Caesar Dumnörigem monet, ut in reliquum tempus 1 suspīciones vītet. 3. Năm, nē ējus supplīcio² Divitiāci anīmum offenderet, verebatur. 4. Dumnorigi persuasit ut idem3 conārētur. 5. Copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit ĕquĭtātumquĕ, qui sustĭnēret hostium impĕtum, mīsit. 6. Lēgātos ad eum mittunt qui dīcant agros consuli4 vastandos esse.5 7. Postŭlāvit nē aut Aeduis⁶ aut eōrum sŏciis⁶ bellum inferret. 8. Nonnulli pudore adducti,7 ut timoris suspīcionem vītārent, remanebant. 9. Caesar omnium ex conspectu remōtis ĕquis,8 ŭt spem fŭgae tollĕret, cŏhortātus9 suos10 proelium commīsit. 10. Caesar ăd Ariovistum lēgātos mīsit, qui ăb eo postularent, uti ăliquem 11 locum medium utriusque 12 colloquio 13 dīceret. 11. Castella commūnit, quo 14 făcilius, sī sē invīto 15 transīre conārentur, prohibēre possit.

Write in Latin. 16

1. I shall give orders to the Gauls to furnish us with a supply of corn. 2. He had given orders to the Sequani to furnish a supply of corn to the soldiers. 3. We shall advise

him ¹⁷ to avoid suspicions in the future. 4. We have advised Cassius to avoid suspicions in the future. 5. We advised Cassius to avoid suspicions in the future. 6. Caesar was fearing that Dumnorix would not avoid suspicions in the future. 7. We shall send cavalry to withstand the attack of the Gauls. 8. Caesar, after removing his horse⁸ out of sight, urged his men to fight bravely. 9. He demanded that they should not make war either upon us or upon our allies. 10. We shall fortify the place that ¹⁴ we may be able to more easily withstand an attack.

Notes and Questions.

- 1 in reliquum tempus, in the future; lit., into the remaining time.
- ² See 79.
- 8 See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13; where would idem be made?
- 4 See 131.

- ⁵ See 130 and 62.
- ⁶ See **67**.
- ⁷ See Ln. LXIII., Ex. 3. ⁹ See Ln. LXIII., Ex. 2.
- ⁸ See 122 and EXAMPLES. ¹⁰ See Ln. LXV., Note 1.
- 11 How declined? See 116, a.
- 12 mědium utriusque, $midway\ between\ both$; uterque is declined like uter. (24)
 - 18 See 39.
 - 14 quo is preferred to ut when its clause contains a comparative.
 - 15 se invito, against his will; see 122; lit., he unwilling.
 - ¹⁶ In writing these imitate carefully the preceding Latin sentences.
 - 17 See Ln. LVIII., NOTE 2.

LESSON LXXIV.

-002000-

USE OF THE DATIVE (continued).

137. Dative of the Person possessing. A. & G. 231: A. & S. 384: B. 243, Rule XXXI.: B. & M. 821: G. 349: H. 387: C. 156.

138. Two Datives. A. & G. 233, a: A. & S. 385; 386: B. 246, Rule XXXIV.: B. & M. 848: G. 350: H. 390, I., II.: C. 161.

EXAMPLES.

- Est mihi (137) domi pater, I have a father at home; lit., a father is to me at home.
- 2. Sex viro (137) filii fuerunt, A MAN had six sons.
- 3. Haec mihi (138) sunt curae, these (things) are A CARE TO ME; lit., these (things) are FOR A CARE TO ME.
- 4. Tertiam ăciem nostris subsidio mīsit, he sent the third line AS A RELIEF TO OUR (MEN).
- 5. Novissimis praesidio erant, they were a protection to the hindmost.

Analyze and parse.

1. Mĭhi est ămīcus; tĭbi sunt plūrimi ămīci. 2. Magni pedes sunt meo fratri sed caput parvum. 3. Erit consuli magnus exercitus. 4. Imperātori fuerunt mīlites multi et1 fortes. 5. Virtus est viro honori. 6. Dixit haec sibi esse cūrae. 7. Quinque cohortes castris praesidio reliquit. 8. Legāto2 imperāvit ŭt quinque cohortes castris praesidio relinqueret.3 9. Magno ūsui nostris fuit. 10. Năm equitatui,4 quem⁵ auxilio Caesări Aedui miserant, Dumnorix praeerat. 11. Gallis magno ăd pugnam⁶ ĕrat⁷ impĕdīmento, quŏd nōn sătis commode pugnare poterant. 12. Boii et Tulingi, qui hŏmĭnum mīlĭbus8 circĭtĕr quindĕcĭm agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidio erant, ex itinere lo nostros circumvēnēre. 11 13. His rēbus 12 cognĭtis Caesar Gallorum anĭmos verbis 13 confirmāvit pollĭcĭtusquĕ est sĭbi eam rem cūrae fŭtūram.14 14. Ariovistus dixit ămīcĭtiam pŏpŭli Rōmāni sĭbi ornāmento et praesidio non detrimento esse 15 oportere. 16

Write in Latin.

1. My friend has four sons. 2. The lieutenant had many soldiers. 3. He will leave two legions as a protection to the camp. 4. The cavalry, which the lieutenant sent, was a great protection to the rear. 5. It was a great hindrance to us in

battle that we could ¹⁷ not fight with sufficient ease. 6. He will order the lieutenant ² to send ¹⁸ soldiers as a relief to our men. 7. He ordered the lieutenant to send soldiers as a relief to our men. 8. The consul ought ¹⁶ to send soldiers as a relief to us.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See Ln. VI., Note 5.

- ² See 132.
- ⁸ Why is the Subjunctive used ? (136) Why the Imperfect Tense ? (135) What question does ut rělinquëret answer? (136)
 - 4 See 67.
 - ⁵ quem; why is the Masculine Singular used? Why the Accusative?
 - 6 ăd pugnam, in battle.
 - ⁷ The subject of erat is the substantive clause quod poterant.
 - 8 Is milibus used as a noun or as an adjective? (108); see also 54.
 - 9 novissimis, to the hindmost; lit., to the newest.
 - 10 ex itinere, on the march.
- 11 What is the other ending of the Perfect Indicative Active 3d Plural?
- ¹² See **122**.

13 See 54.

14 Sc. essě.

15 See 129.

16 See 128 and Ex. 8.

17 See Ln. XXVIII., Ex. 2.

18 See 136.



LESSON LXXV.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

139. Subjunctive of Result. A. & G. 319, d; 332, a: A. & S. 483; 494, a; 499: B. 296, RULE LIX.; 297, RULE LX.; 301, RULE LXII.: B. & M. 1218-1220: G. 553-558: 551, 1, 2: H. 500, I., II.; 501, I., 1; 504: C. 207; 208; 209; 223.

EXAMPLES.

 Tantus timor exercitum occupavit ut omnium mentes perturbaret, such fear seized the army that it disturbed the minds of all.

- 2. Dixit non se tăm barbărum esse ŭt non sciret, he said he was not so uncivilized AS not TO KNOW.
- 3. FTebat ŭt minus lātē văgārentur, it happened that they roamed about less extensively.
- 4. Rětinēri non potěrant quin tēla conjicěrent, they could not be prevented from hurling weapons.

Analyze and parse.

1. Mīlĭtes numero¹ tam multi erant, ut agmini² novissimo magno praesidio² essent.³ 2. His rēbus⁴ fīēbat⁵ ŭt ĕt minus lātē văgārentur ĕt minus făcile finitimis bellum inferre possent. 3. Ariovistus dixit non se tăm barbărum esse, ŭt non sciret bello Allobrogum proximo Aeduos Romanis auxilium non tŭlisse. 4. Tantus sŭbito timor omnem exercitum occupavit, ŭt non mediocriter omnium mentes 7 animosque perturbaret. 5. Mons autěm altissímus impendēbat, ŭt8 făcĭle perpauci prohibēre possent. 6. Divico respondit: Ită Helvētios ā mājōrībus suis institūtos esse, 10 ūti obsides accipere, non dare, consuērint.11 7. Ita dies 12 circiter quindecim iter fecerunt, ŭti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum 13 sex mīlia passuum interessent. 8. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantos sĭbi 14 spĭrĭtus, tantam arrŏgantiam sumpsĕrat, ŭt fĕrendus 15 non videretur. 9. Germani retineri non poterant quin in nostros tela conjicerent.

Write in Latin.

1. Such fear seized the men that they all fled. 2. Such fear seizes the men that they all flee. 3. We are so many in number 1 that we can easily keep their 17 army from the march. 16 4. For these reasons 4 it happened that they easily kept our army from the march. 16 5. For these reasons it happens that they make war upon their neighbors. 6. They marched in such a manner that four miles intervened between their rear and our van. 13 7. This man assumes 19 such lofty airs

that he does not seem endurable. ¹⁵ 8. The lieutenant assumed such lofty airs that he did not seem endurable. ¹⁵ 9. The Romans could not be prevented from making ¹⁸ war upon their neighbors.

Notes and Questions.

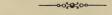
1 See 124.

- ² See 138.
- ⁸ Why the Imperfect? (135)
- 4 his rebus, for these reasons; see 79.
- ⁵ What is the subject of fiebat? ⁶ See 111.
- ⁷ How do mens and animus differ in signification? See GEN. Vy.
- ⁸ ŭt, so that. ⁹ ita modifies instĭtūtos essĕ.
- 10 institutos esse is object of respondit. (52)
- ¹¹ See A. & G. **128**, α: A. & S. **228**, α, b: B. **95**, d: B. & M. **315**: G. **151**, 1: H. **235**: C. **84**; 7.
 - 12 See 93.

13 primum, sc. agmen; render van.

- 14 See 39.
- 15 ferendus, endurable; lit. (one) to be endured.
- 16 See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6. 17 See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.
- 18 See EXAMPLE 4.

19 to assume, sibi sūměre.



LESSON LXXVI.

USE OF THE GENITIVE.

- 140. Genitive with Adjectives. A. & G. 218: A. & S. 359: B. 234, RULE XXIII.: B. & M. 765: G. 373: H. 399: C. 136, 2.
- 141. Genitive in Predicate. A. & G. 214, c: A. & S. 357: B. 230, Rem. 1: B. & M. 780: G. 365: H. 401: C. 135.
- 142. Genitive with certain Verbs. A. & G. 219: A. & S. 365: B. 235, Rule XXIV.: B. & M. 788: G. 375: H. 406, II.: C. 137, 1, 2.

EXAMPLES.

1. Qui rĕi (140) mīlītāris pĕrītissīmus hǎbēbātur, who was considered very skilful in military science.

- 2. Bellandi (140) cupidi, desirous of carrying on war.
- 3. Jūdicium impěrātōris (141) est, the decision is the general's; or, belongs to the general.
- 4. Gallia est pŏpŭli (141) Rōmāni, Gaul belongs to the Roman PEOPLE.
- 5. Rěminiscātur pristinae virtūtis (142) Helvētiōrum, let him recollect the former valor of the Helvetii.
- 6. Větěris contumeliae (142) oblivisci vult, he is willing to forget the old insult.

Analyze and parse.

1. Lēgātus belli pĕrītus¹ hăbētur. 2. Lēgātus nītĭtur ŭt belli perītus fīat.² 3. Nītēbātur ŭt rei mīlītāris perītissīmus fĭĕret.³ 4. Publius Considius, qui rĕi mīlĭtāris pĕrītissĭmus hăbēbātur ĕt⁵ ĭn exercĭtu Luci Sullae ĕt posteā ĭn Marci Crassi⁴ fuĕrat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur. 5. Ariovistus dixit sē non tăm imperitum esse rērum, ŭt non scīret6 Aeduos auxĭlio⁷ pŏpŭli Rōmāni nōn ūsos essĕ.⁸ 6. Mīlĭtes hortābor, ŭt gloriae sempër memores sint. 7. Nos monuit ut virtutis semper memores essemus. 8. Qua de causa homines bellandi 10 cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur. 9. Dīcit ipsum esse Dumnörigem cupidum novarum rērum. 10. Dīcunt dē summa belli¹¹ jūdĭcium impĕrātōris essĕ ¹² sē existĭmāvisse. ¹² 11. Něquě jūdícat Galliam pŏtius essě Ariovisti quăm pŏpŭli Rōmāni. 12. Mīlĭtum est fortĭtĕr pugnāre; 13 impĕrātōris est impërare. 13. Divico Caesarem hortatur ut reminiscatur et 14 větěris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiōrum. 14. Caesar recentium injūriārum oblīvisci non vult.15 15. Omnis contumeliae obliviscamur.

Write in Latin.

1. 1 am not considered very skilful in war. ¹⁶ 2. I shall strive to become skilful in war. 3. This lieutenant, who had been in Sulla's army and afterwards in Caesar's and was

considered skilful in battle, was sent forward with soldiers.

4. These soldiers are very desirous of carrying on war.
5. The decision concerning the general management
11 of affairs belongs
17 to the consul.

6. This house is Caesar's.

7. We ought to forget insults.
8. Let us forget all wrongs.

Notes and Questions.

1 See 64.

- ² See 126 and 136.
- ⁸ Why Imperfect? (135)
- 4 in Marci Crassi, sc. exercitu; translate, in that of Marcus Crassus.
- ⁵ ĕt connects hăbēbātur and fuĕrat.
- ⁶ See 139 and Example 2.

7 See 104.

- 8 ūsos essē depends upon sciret
- 9 qua de causa, for this reason.
- 10 bellandi is a Gerund; parse it like a noun.
- 11 de summa belli, concerning the general management of the war.
- 12 esse depends upon existimāvisse; existimāvisse upon dicunt.
- 13 See 129.

14 See Ln. LXI., Note 3.

15 See 125.

16 See 140.

17 See Ex. 3.

18 See 142.



LESSON LXXVII.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

143. A. & G. 304-308: A. & S. 476, a, b: B. 305, a, 1-3; 306, Rule LXVI.: B. & M. 1259-1268: G. 590; 591; 596-599: H. 506; 507, I.-III.: C. 215, 1, 2, 3, 4.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Sī vincit, laetātur, if he is conquering, he is rejoicing.
- 2. Sī vincet, laetābĭtur, if he conquers (shall conquer), he will rejoice.
- 3. Sī vīcĕrit, laetābĭtur, if he conquers (shall have conquered), he will rejoice.

- 4. Sī vincat, laetētur, if he should conquer, he would rejoice.
- 5. Si vinceret, laetaretur, if he were conquering, he would be rejoicing.
- 6. Sī vīcisset, laetātus esset, if he had conquered, he would have rejoiced.

Analyze and parse.

1. Sī pugnat, vincit. 2. Sī pugnābit, vincet. 3. Sī pugnāverit, vincet. 4. Sī pugnet, vincat. 5. Sī pugnāret, vincēret. 6. Sī pugnāvisset, vīcisset. 7. Sī Helvētii Allobrŏgĭbus¹ sătisfăcient, cum iis pācem făciam. 8. Sī Helvētii Allobrŏgĭbus sătisfăciant, cum iis pācem făciam. 9. Caesar dīcit sī Helvētii Allobrŏgĭbus sătisfăciant, sēsē cum iis pācem esse factūrum.² 10. Sī quid³ vultis,¹o rĕvertĭmĭni.⁴ 11. Sī pācem pŏpulus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faciet, ĭn eam partem ībunt¹¹ Helvētii ubī eos esse vŏluĕris.⁵ 12. Sīn bello⁶ persĕqui² persĕvērābis,³ rĕmĭniscĕre⁴ ĕt vĕtĕris incommŏdi³ pŏpuli Rōmāni et pristĭnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. 13. Sī vĕtĕris contumēliae oblīvisci vellem,¹o num¹² ĕtiām rĕcentium injūriārum mĕmŏriam dēpōnēre² possem? 14. Sī id fīet, prōvinciae¹³ pĕrīculōsum ĕrit. 15. Caesar dīcit sī nēmo¹⁴ sĕquātur, sē cum sōla dĕcĭma lĕgiōne ĭtūrum essĕ.¹¹

Write in Latin.

1. If he is satisfying the Aedui, he is rejoicing. 2. If he satisfies the Aedui, he will rejoice. 3. If he should satisfy the Aedui, he would rejoice. 4. If he were satisfying the Aedui, he would be rejoicing. 5. If he had satisfied the Aedui, he would have rejoiced. 6. If you wish anything, 3 ask. 7. If they make peace with us, we shall go into that part where they wish 5 us to be. 8. But if they persist in pursuing 8 us with war, 6 let them recall to mind 15 our former valor. 9 9. If we were willing to forget the old misfortune, could we also get rid of the remembrance of recent insults?

Notes and Questions.

1 See 132.

² essě factūrum = factūrum essě.

8 See 116 and Ex. 6.

- 4 See 47.
- ⁵ What does the Future Perfect Tense denote? (42)
- 6 Sag #4

- 7 See 69.
- 8 persequi persevero, I persist in pursuing.
 - ursuing.

 10 See 125.

- See 142.
 See 126.
- 12 What answer is implied? See LN. LXI., NOTE 1.
- 18 See 86.
- ¹⁴ The Genitive and Ablative of nemo are rare: these cases are supplied by nullius and nullo (from nullus, 24).
 - 15 See 134.



LESSON LXXVIII.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE.

- 144. Ablative expressing Measure (Degree) of Difference. A. & G. 250: A. & S. 415: B. 262, Rule XLVII.: B. & M. 929: G. 400: H. 423: C. 176.
- 144, a. Ablative of Quality. A. & G. 251: A. & S. 411: B. 263, Rule XLVIII.: B. & M. 888: G. 402: H. 419, II.: C. 175. This is called sometimes the Ablative of Characteristic, sometimes the Descriptive Ablative.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Alterum iter multo (144) expeditius erat, the other route was MUCH more passable.
- 2. Mātūrius paulo (144) dŏmum contendit, he hastens home A LITTLE sooner.
- 3. Ipsum Dumnŏrĭgem, summā audāciā (144, a), Dumnorix himself, (a man) of the greatest boldness.
- Summa hūmānĭtāte (144, α) ădŏlescens, α youth of the HIGHEST CULTURE.

Analyze and parse.

1. Caesar multo grăvius quĕritŭr.¹ 2. Multo mājor ălacrĭtas exercitui² injecta est. 3. Alterum iter per provinciam nostram ĕrat, multo făcĭlius atquĕ expĕdītius, proptĕreā quŏd inter fines Helvētiorum et Allobrogum, qui nuper pācāti erant, Rhodanus fluit. 4. Caesar ūnā aestāte³ duobus maximis bellis 4 confectis mātūrius paulo, quăm tempus anni postŭlābat, ĭn hīberna ĭn⁵ Sēquănos exercĭtum dēduxit. 5. Post ēius mortem nĭhĭlo mĭnus Helvētii id, quŏd constĭtuĕrant,6 făcĕre conantur, ŭt ē fīnībus suis exeant.7 6. Rěliquum spătium mons continet magnā altītūdine, ita, ŭt rādīces8 montis ex utrāque parte⁹ rīpae¹⁰ flūminis contingant.¹¹ 7. Galli ingenti magnitūdine corpŏrum Germānos, 12 incrēdibili virtūte atquĕ exercitātione in armis esse 18 praedicābant. 8. Commodissimum vīsum est 14 Cāium Vălērium Procillum, summā virtūte ět hūmānĭtāte ădŏlescentem, ăd eum mittěre. 9. Rěpěrit ipsum esse Dumnörigem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum 15 rērum 16 novārum.

Write in Latin.

1. He censures the soldiers much more severely. 2. He censured me a little more severely than the remaining soldiers.

3. The route through our province is much more practicable than through the territory of the Sequani. 4. The lieutenant led his army into winter-quarters among⁵ the Aedui a little sooner than the time of year demanded. 5. We shall none the less attempt to do that which we have resolved (to do).

6. Caius is a youth of extraordinary valor. 7. We have seen mountains of great height. 8. It seemed 14 most suitable to send to him Titus, a youth of extraordinary practice in arms.

Notes.

¹ See 103.	² See 67.
⁸ See 111.	4 See 122.

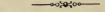
5 in, among. 6 constituërant, sc. făcere.

7 mt — exeant is an appositive to id; for the mood, see 139; translate, to go forth.

8 See 34. 9 ex utrāque parte, on each side.

10 See 32.
 11 See 139.
 12 See 53.
 13 See 52.

14 What is the subject of visum est? (129)



LESSON LXXIX.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

145. A. & G. 313, a-e: A. & S. 478-480; 510 (2): B. 292, e, Rule LVI.; 303, d, Rule LXIV.: B. & M. 1281-1284: G. 605-609: H. 514; 515, I.-III.: C. 204, I, 2; 214, 3; 225.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Quum pugnātum sit, although they fought; lit., it was fought.
- 2. Licet victoria glorietur, although he glories in victory.
- 3. Quamvis căreret nomine, although he was without the name.
- Etsī vǐdēbat, tăměn non pǔtābat, although he saw, yet he did not think.

Analyze and parse.

1. Quǔm fortǐter pugnent, tămen non vincent. 2. Quǔm Sequăni Romanis¹ sătisfēcerint, tămen legatus pacem cǔm iis non făcit. 3. Quǔm ea² ĭtă sint, tămen, sī obsĭdes ăb iis sĭbi dentur,³ cǔm iis pacem făciat.³ 4. Năm hoc toto proelio,⁴ quǔm ăb hora septima ăd vesperum pugnātum sit,⁵ āversum hostem vidēre nemo potuit. 5. Lĭcet me hortetur, non pugnābo. 6. Lĭcet mīles vulnerātus sit, tămen laetātur. 7. Lĭ-

cet Helvētii sua victōria⁷ glōrientur, tăměn ĭter făcient nōn pěr nostram prōvinciam. 8. Erat dignĭtāte⁸ rēgia, quamvīs cărēret nōmĭne.⁹ 9. Quamvīs sint sŭb ăqua, sŭb ăqua mălĕdīcĕre tentant. 10. Caesar, etsī prŏpĕ exacta jăm aestas ĕrat, tăměn eō¹⁰ exercĭtum adduxit. 11. Năm etsī sĭnĕ ullō pĕrīcŭlo lĕgiōnis¹¹ dēlectae cŭm ĕquĭtātu proelium fŏre¹² vĭdēbat, tăměn committendum¹³ nōn pǔtābat. 12. Ită dies circĭtĕr quindĕcĭm ĭter fēcērunt, ŭtī intĕr nŏvissĭmum hostium agmen ĕt nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnis¹⁴ aut sēnis mīlĭbus¹⁵ passuum intĕresset.¹⁶

Write in Latin.

1. Although they fought bravely, yet they did not conquer.
2. Although these things are so, yet we shall make peace with them.
3. No one fled in this whole battle, although they fought from the fifth hour till sunset.
4. We cannot see the mountain, although it is of great height.
5. The lieutenant did not lead his army into winter-quarters, although the summer was almost gone.
6. He thinks that he ought to begin 13 battle, although he sees that it will not be without danger to the legions.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 132. ² See Ln. LVIII., Note 13.

⁴ See 111. ⁵ See Ex. 1.

⁸ See Ln. LXXVII., Ex. 4. What is the force of this conditional clause? (143)

⁶ licet is properly an Impersonal Verb (128), Present Tense, with ut (that) omitted; hence it is followed only by the Present and Perfect Subjunctive. (135) What is the literal translation?

⁷ See 79.

⁸ See **144**, a.

⁹ See Ex. 3.

¹⁰ eō, thither.

¹¹ A. & G. **217**: A. & S. **353** (2): B. **233**, Rule XXII.: B. & M. **746**: G. **361**, 2: H. **396**, III.: C. **133**, 3.

¹² főre = fűtűrum essé. (62)

¹³ committendum, sc. esse; see 130.

¹⁴ quinis, etc., than five, etc. each day.

¹⁵ See 133.

¹⁶ See 139.

LESSON LXXX.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE (continued).

- **146.** Ablative of Price. A. & G. 252: A. & S. 408: B. 258, RULE XLIII., c: B. & M. 884: G. 404: H. 422: C. 179. This answers such questions as For how much? At what price?
- 147. Ablative of Distance. A. & G. 257, b: A. & S. 423, b: B. 262, Rule XLVII.: B. & M. 958: G. 335, Remark 1: H. 379, 2: C. 176. This answers the question How far?
- 148. Ablative with Adjectives. A. & G. 245, a: A. & S. 418: B. 261, Rule XLVI., a: B. & M. 919: G. 373, Remarks 1-4: H. 421, III.: C. 179, 2.

EXAMPLES.

- Dŏmum duōbus tălentis (146) ēmit, he bought a house for two talents.
- Oppidum parvo pretio (146) vendidit, he sold the town at a small price.
- Mīlibus (147) passuum quattuor ĕt viginti absunt, they are TWENTY-FOUR MILES distant.
- 4. Dignus est mājoribus (148), he is worthy of (his) ancestors.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hic¹ mercēde puĕros ĕt puellas dŏcet. 2. Vīgintī tālentis ūnam ōrātiōnem Isocrătes vendĭdit. 3. Vendĭdit hic
auro patriam. 4. Victōria nōbis² multo sanguĭne stĕtit.³
5. Vĕreor nē victōria iis multo sanguĭne stet.⁴ 6. Quŭm Rōmāni vīcĕrint,⁵ tămĕn victōria iis multo sanguĭne stĕtit.
7. Septĭmo die āb explōrātōrĭbus certior factus⁶ est Ariovisti
cōpiasⁿ ā nostris⁶ mīlĭbus passuum quattuor ĕt vīgintī ābesse.⁶
8. Hic lŏcus aequo fĕrē spătio āb castris Ariovisti ĕt Caesăris
ăbĕrat. 9. Lĕgiōnem Caesar, quăm ĕquis¹o dēvexĕrat, passibus dŭcentis āb eo tŭmŭlo constĭtuit. 10. Itĕm ĕquĭtes

Ariovisti pări intervallo constiterunt.¹¹ 11. Eōdem die castra prōmōvit ĕt mīlĭbus passuum sex ā Caesăris castris sŭb monte consēdit. 12. Hī pueri patrĭbus indigni sunt. 13. Hic impĕrātor immortālĭtāte dignus est. 14. Lĭcĕt¹² hī mīlĭtes fortissĭmi sint, tămĕn mājōrĭbus indigni sunt. 15. Puĕrum hortēmur ŭt mājōrĭbus dignus sit.¹³ 16. Nulla vox est ăb iis audīta pŏpŭli Rōmāni mājestāte ĕt sŭpĕriōrĭbus victōriis indigna.

Write in Latin.

1. This man¹ will teach for wages. 2. I shall sell my house at a small price. 3. He is by no means rich, although he sells⁵ houses at a large price. 4. I fear that I shall not sell⁴ my house at a large price. 5. We are about fifteen miles from the city. 6. We shall station the third legion three hundred paces from the hill. 7. He will station his cavalry at nearly an equal distance from the same place. 8. We shall move forward our camp on the same day, and encamp at the foot of a mountain ten miles from Geneva. 9. I fear that these girls are not worthy of their mother. 10. Let us urge the soldiers to be¹³ worthy of their country.

Notes.

¹ See Ln. LVIII., Note 13. ² See 39.

⁸ See Gen. Vy. under stŏ. ⁴ See Ln. XLVI., Note 4.

⁵ See **145**. ⁷ See **53**.

⁶ See Ln. LXVIII., Ex. 2.

8 Sc. copiis.

10 ĕquis, on horseback; see 54.

¹¹ See consistŏ, GEN. Vy.

12 See LN. LXXIX., NOTE 6.

13 See 136.

⁹ **ăbesse** depends upon the idea of saying contained in **ab** — **factus est**, he was informed by scouts that, etc., i. e. who said that, etc.

LESSON LXXXI.

CAUSAL CLAUSES.

149. A. & G. 321, a, b, c; 326: A. & S. 500 (2) b; 510 (2); 519: B. 302, RULE LXIII.: B. & M. 1250; 1251; 1255: G. 538-541; 587; 636: H. 516, I., II.; 517: C. 214, 3; 224; 232.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Quum impetus sustinere non possent, alteri se in montem receperunt, since they could not withstand the attacks, one party withdrew upon the mountain.
- Caesar injūriam făciēbat qui vectīgālia dētĕriōra făcĕret, Caesar was doing wrong because he was making the revenues decrease.
- 3. Aedui questi sunt quŏd Harūdes fīnes eōrum pŏpŭlārentur, the Aedui complained because (as they said) the Harudes were laying waste their territory.
- 4. Quŏd ā Bibracte ăbĕrat, rei frümentāriae prospiciendum existimāvit, because he was distant from Bibracte, he thought that he must look out for supplies.

Analyze and parse.

1. Perfăcile est, quăm virtūte¹ omnibus praestētis, tōtīus Galliae impĕrio² pŏtīri.³ 2. Orgētŏrix dixit perfăcile essĕ, quăm virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae impĕrio potīri. 3. Quăm magna ex parte⁴ eōrum prĕcibus⁵ adductus bellum suscēpĕrit, quĕritur. 4. Caesări quăm id nunciātum esset, mātūrat ăb urbe prŏficisci. 5. Diūtius⁶ quăm nostrōrumⁿ impĕtus sustinēre nōn possent, altĕri sē, ŭt coepĕrant,³ in montem rĕcēpērunt, altĕri ăd impĕdīmenta ĕt carros suos sē contŭlērunt. 6. In fīnes Lingŏnum die quarto pervēnērunt quăm propter vulnĕra mīlĭtum nostri trīduum mŏrāti eos sĕqui nōn pŏtuissent. 7. Ariovistus dixit magnam Caesărem

injūriam făcĕre qui suo adventu vectīgālia dētĕriōra⁹ făcĕret.

8. Grăvĭtĕr eos accūsat quŏd ăb iis nōn sublĕvētur.

9. Multo ¹⁰ ĕtiăm grăvius quŏd sit destĭtūtus quĕrĭtur.

10. Proptĕr frīgŏra, quŏd Gallia sŭb septemtriōnĭbus pŏsĭta est,¹¹ frūmenta ĭn agris mātūra nōn ĕrant.

11. Eo autĕm frūmento,² quŏd ¹² flūmĭne Arăre nāvĭbus ¹³ subvexĕrat, proptĕreā mĭnus ūti ¹⁴ pŏtĕrat, quŏd ĭter äb Arăre Helvētii āvertĕrant, ā quĭbus discēdĕre nōlēbat.¹⁵

12. Quŏd ā Bibracte, oppĭdo Aeduōrum longē maxĭmo ĕt copiōsissĭmo, nōn amplius mīlĭbus ¹⁶ passuum octōdĕcim ăbĕrat, rei frūmentāriae prospĭciendum ¹⁷ existĭmavit: ĭter ăb Helvētiis āvertit āc Bibracte ¹⁸ īre contendit.

Write in Latin.

1. Since we excel the Romans in valor, it will be very easy to get possession of their government. 2. Since they fight more bravely than the Gauls 19 they will easily conquer. 3. We are fleeing, since we cannot longer withstand their attacks. 4. Since they cannot longer withstand the attack of the enemy, one party withdraws upon a mountain, the other betakes itself to the baggage. 5. He complained because (as he said) he could not use the corn. 6. He complains because (as he says) he has sold his house at a small price. 20 7. Because Germany is placed towards the north the cold there is great. 8. We shall march through Geneva at sunset, 21 because we are not more than twenty miles distant.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 124.

² See 104.

⁸ See 129.

⁴ magna ex parte, in great part.

⁵ See 79.

⁶ Diūtius modifies sustinēre.

⁷ The *Possessive Pronouns*, like the Demonstrative, are often used substantively. See LN. LVIII., NOTES 1 and 13.

⁸ What kind of a verb is coeperant? (127)

⁹ See EXAMPLE 2.

¹⁰ See 144.

11 Of what does quod - posita est express the cause?

14 See 69.
 15 See 125.
 16 See 133.
 17 See EXAMPLE 4.

18 See 105. 19 Than the Gauls, quam Galli.

2) See **146**. 21 See **111**.



LESSON LXXXII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

150. A. & G. 323; 325; 327; 328: A. & S. 502; 503; 505; 509, a. B. 292, d, 1-3, Rule LVI.; 304, 1-3, Rule LXV.: B. & M. 1237; 1238; 1241; 1244: G. 570; 571; 574; 576; 579; 580; 581: H. 519, I., II, 1, 2; 520, I., 1, 2, II.; 521, I., II., 1, 2: C. 214, 1, 2, 4, 5.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Quum legăti mitterentur, Ariovistus postulăvit, when ambassadors were sent, Ariovistus demanded.
- 2. Priusquăm quidquăm conaretur Divitiacum vocat, before he attempted anything he summoned Divitiacus.
- 3. Dum haec geruntur Caesari nunciatum est, while these things were taking place it was reported to Caesar.
- 4. Non exspectandum sibi stătuit dum pervenirent, he decided that he ought not to wait until they should arrive.

Analyze and parse.

1. Diū quum esset pugnātum, impēdīmentis castrisque² nostri³ potīti sunt. 2. Quum trīdui viam⁴ processisset, nunciātum est⁵ ei Ariovistum cum suis omnībus copiis contendēre.
3. Hic pāgus ūnus, quum domo⁶ exisset patrum nostrorum memoriā,⁷ Lucium Cassium consulem interfecerat et ējus exercitum sub jugum mīserat. 4. Quum²⁰ hostium acies ā sīnistro cornu⁸ pulsa⁹ atque in fugam conversa esset, ā dextro

cornu věhěmentěr multĭtūdĭne suōrum³ nostram ăciem prēmēbant. 5. Ităquě priusquam quidquăm cōnārētur Divitiăcum ăd sē vŏcāri jŭbet.¹ 6. Postquăm ĭd ănĭmum advertit cōpias suas Caesar ĭn proximum collem subdūcit. 7. Eō postquăm Caesar pervēnit obsĭdes, arma, servos¹o pŏposcit. 8. Dŭm haec ĭn collŏquio gĕruntur,¹¹ Caesări nunciātum est⁵ ĕquĭtes Ariovisti lăpĭdes tēlăquĕ¹² ĭn nostros conjĭcĕre. 9. Tămĕn, ŭt spătium intercēdĕre posset, dŭm mīlĭtes, quos ¹³ impĕrāvĕrat, convĕnīrent, lēgātis respondit diem sē ăd dēlībĕrandum ¹⁴ sumptūrum.¹⁵ 10. Quĭbus¹⁶ rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum¹² sĭbi stătuit, dŭm, omnĭbus fortūnis¹³ sociōrum consumptis, ĭn Santŏnos Helvētii pervĕnīrent.

Write in Latin.

1. When ambassadors were sent to Caesar, he demanded corn of them. 19 2. When they had proceeded a three days' march, 4 they pitched (their) camp. 3. Before they attempted to set out they summoned a council. 4. After the general arrived in the territory of the Aedui he demanded corn, wagons, and 10 horses. 5. Although we had routed the enemy's line on the right wing, on the left he was pressing furiously upon us. 6. While the troops are assembling we are waiting. 7. We shall remain in the city until the troops assemble. 8. Influenced by these 16 affairs, we decided that we ought 17 not to wait until the enemy should lay waste our fields.

Notes.

¹ See A. & G. **276**, d: A. & S. **466**: B. **58**; B. & M. **1082**: G. **220**: H. **467**, III.: C. **189**, 6.

² See Ln. XXIII., Note 2.

⁸ See Ln. LXXXI., Note 7.

⁴ See 109.

⁵ What is the subject of nunciātum est? (129)

⁶ See 107. ⁷ See 111.

⁸ a sĭnistro cornu, on the left wing. ⁹ pulsa, sc. esset.

10 When several nouns follow each other in the same construction, the Latin language either omits the conjunction altogether, or repeats it: e. g. either obsides, arma, servos; or obsides et arma et servos; nor obsides, arma et servos.

¹¹ A. & G. **276**, e: A. & S. **468**; G. **220**, REMARK: H. **467**, 4: C. **214**, 1, note 2.

 12 An enclitic throws its accent back upon the final syllable of the word to which it is attached : tělắque.

13 Sc. convenire.

14 ad deliberandum, for deliberating.

15 sumptūrum, sc. essě.

¹⁶ The Latin often employs a relative where the English prefers a demonstrative: quae res, these affairs.

17 exspectandum, sc. essě. See 130 and 131

¹⁸ See **122**.

19 See 71 and LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

20 See 145.

LESSON LXXXIII.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

151. The Indirect Question. A. & G. 334, w. preceding Note: A. & S. 518: B. 294, a, Rule LVII.: B. & M. 1182: G. 454; 469: H. 528, 2 Note; 529, I.: C. 231, 1 w. n. 1.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Quid sui consili¹ sit ostendit, he shows what his plan is.
- 2. Causa quae esset quaesiit, he asked what the cause was.
- 3. Ariovisto mīrum vīsum est quid in Gallia Caesari negōti¹ esset, Ariovistus wondered what business Caesar had in Gaul.

Analyze and parse.

- 1. Quālis esset nātūra montis, qui² cognoscĕrent,³ mīsit.
- 2. Dīcit intellĭgĕre sēsē quanto ĭd cŭm pĕrīcŭlo fēcĕrit.
- 3. Ex quo jūdicāri pŏtest,⁴ quantum hăbeat ĭn sē bŏni ¹ constantia. 4. Dumnŏrĭgi custōdes pōnit,⁵ ŭt, quae ăgat, quĭbus-cŭm⁶ lŏquātur, scīre possit. 5. Ariovistus dixit sĭbi mīrum vĭdēri,⁷ quid ĭn sua Gallia, quăm bello⁸ vīcisset,⁹ aut Caesări¹⁰

aut omnīno pŏpülo Rōmāno 10 nĕgōti 1 esset. 6. Flūmen est Arar, quod pĕr fīnes Aeduōrum ĕt Sēquănōrum ĭn Rhŏdānum influit incrēdĭbĭli lēnĭtāte, ĭtā ŭt ocŭlis, ĭn utram partem 11 fluat, jūdĭcāri nōn possit. 7. Postero die castra ex eo lŏco mŏvent. Idĕm 12 făcit Caesar, ĕquĭtātumquĕ omnem, ăd nŭmĕrum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omni prōvincia ĕt Aeduis atquĕ eōrum sŏciis coactum hăbēbat, 13 praemittit, qui vĭdeant, 3 quas ĭn partes hostes ĭter făciant. 8. Caesar vĕhĕmentĕr eos incūsävit quod, aut quăm ĭn partem aut quo consĭlio 14 dūcĕrentur, 15 sĭbi quaerendum 16 aut cōgĭtandum pŭtārent. 17 9. Caesar dixit dē quarta vĭgĭlia sē castra mōtūrum, ŭt quăm prīmum intellĭgĕre posset, utrŭm ăpŭd eos pŭdor atquĕ offĭcium, ŭn tĭmor vălēret. 10. Quŭm ex captīvis quaerĕret Caesar, quăm ŏb rem Ariovistus proelio 8 nōn dēcertāret, hanc ıĕpĕriēbat causam.

Write in Latin.

1. Caesar asked in what direction the river flowed. 2. We shall send (men) to ascertain³ in what direction the river flows.

3. It cannot be determined in what direction the river flows.

4. Labienus sent forward the cavalry to see in what direction the enemy had fled. 5. Liscus censures them severely because (as he says) they think ¹⁷ they ought to ask ¹⁶ in what direction they are to be led. 6. We shall break up camp in the first watch, that we may be able to know as soon as possible whether our soldiers are brave or cowardly. 7. We shall place guards over him,⁵ that we may know with ⁶ whom he speaks. 8. The general placed guards over the soldiers, that he might be able to ascertain what they were doing.

Notes and Questions.

1 quid sui consili, what his plan; lit., what of his plan. See A. & G. 216: A. & S. 354: B. 227, RULE XVII.: B. & M. 77: G. 366; 371: H. 396, IV.: C. 133, 4.

- 2 qui, sc. viros as antecedent.
- ⁸ See 136 and Ex. 10.
- 4 What is the subject of potest?
- ⁵ Dumnorigi ponit, he places guards over (lit. for) Dumnorix.
- 6 See LN. LIX., NOTE 1.
- 7 sĭbi vĭdēri, he wondered; lit., it seemed to him wonderful; for sĭbi, see 39.
 - 8 bello, in war; see 54.
 - 9 vicisset, translate by the Indicative.
 - 10 See 137.
 - 11 in utram partem, in which direction.
 - 12 How does idem differ in meaning from idem?
- 13 coactum hăbābat, he had collected. A. & G. 292, c: A. & S. 547 c:
 B. & M. 1358: G. 230: H. 388, 1, Note: C. 251, 3.
 - 14 See 79.

- 15 dücerentur, they were to be led.
- 16 quaerendum, sc. essě: see 130. 17 See 149 and Ex. 3.

LESSON LXXXIV.

ORATIO OBLIQUA. - INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

152. A. & G. 335, Rem.; 336; 339: A. & S. 515; 516: B. 316; 317, Rule LXXIV.: B. & M. 1295; 1296: G. 651-653: H. 522; 523, I., II., 1, 2, III.; 524: C. 228; 229.

EXAMPLE.

Oratio Recta, Direct Discourse.

Ob eam rem ex cīvĭtāte profūgi ĕt Romam vēni, quod nĕquĕ jūrejūrando nĕquĕ obsĭdĭbus tĕnēbar.

I fled from the state and came to Rome for this reason, because I was restrained neither by an oath nor by hostages. Oratio Obliqua, Indirect Discourse.

Lŏcūtus est Divitiācus: ŏb eam rem sē ex cīvĭtāte prŏfūgisse ĕt Rōmam vēnisse, quŏd nĕquĕ jūrejūrando nĕquĕ obsĭdĭbus tĕnērētur.

Divitiacus said: **he** fled from the state and came to Rome for this reason, because **he** was restrained neither by an oath nor by hostages.

Analyze and parse.

1. Divico respondit: Ită Helvētios ā mājorībus suis institūtos esse, ŭtī obsides accipere, non dare consuerint2; ējus rei populum Romanum esse testem. 2. Legati dixerunt sese hăbēre quasdam res, quas ex communi consensu ăb eo petere vellent. 3. Locutus est pro his Divitiacus Aeduus: Galliae tōtīus factiones esse duas: hārum3 alterius4 principātum tenēre Aeduos, alterius Arvernos. 4. Dixit horum³ prīmo circĭtĕr mīlia quindĕcĭm Rhēnum transisse: posteāquăm agros ět cultum ět copias Gallorum homines feri ac barbari adamassent, trāductos 6 plūres: 11 nunc esse ĭn Gallia ăd centum et vīgintī mīlium numerum. 5. Dixit cum his Aeduos eorumque clientes semel atque iterum armis contendisse; magnam călămĭtātem pulsos⁸ accēpisse, omnem nōbĭlĭtātem, omnem sĕnātum, omnem ĕquĭtātum⁹ āmīsisse. 6. Anīmadvertit Caesar ūnos ex omnībus Sēguanos nihil eārum rērum3 facere, quas cētěri făcěrent, sĕd tristes căpĭte10 dēmisso terram intuēri.

Notes.

1 See 69. ² See 139 and Ln. LXXV., Note 11. ⁸ See Ln. LXXXIII., Note 1. 4 alterius modifies factionis understood. 5 copias, wealth. 6 trāductos, sc. essě. 7 See 54. 8 See pello. 9 See Ln. LXXXII., Note 10. 10 See 122. 11 plus is declined as follows: M. and F. N. plūres. plūra, plūrium, plūrium, PLUR. plūribus, plūribus, plūres, plūra,

plūribus,

plūribus.

LESSON LXXXV.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (continued).

EXAMPLE.

Direct Discourse.

Indirect Discourse.

Sī pācem pŏpŭlus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis făciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi ĕrunt Helvētii, übi eos tu constituĕris atque esse vŏluĕris; sīn bello persĕqui persĕvērābis, rĕminiscĕre ĕt vĕtĕris incommŏdi pŏpŭli Rōmāni ĕt pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

If the Roman people shall make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii will go into that part and stay where you shall have determined and wished that they should be; but if you shall persist in continuing war, recollect the old misfortune of the Roman people and former valor of the Helvetii.

Is ttă căm Caesăre ēgit: Sī pācem pŏpŭlus Rōmānus căm Helvētiis făc**ĕret**, in eam partem ttāros atquĕ ibi fătāros Helvētios, ŭbi eos Caesar constituisset atquĕ esse vŏluisset; sīn bello persĕqui persĕvērāret, rēmĭnisc**ĕrētur** ĕt vĕtĕris incommŏdi pŏpūli Rōmāni ĕt pristĭnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

He treated with Caesar as follows: If the Roman people should make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii would go into that part and stay where Caesar should have determined and wished that they should be; but if he should persist in continuing war, let him recollect the old misfortune of the Roman people and former valor of the Helvetii.

Analyze and parse.

1. Ariovistus multa¹ praedĭcāvit: Transisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte,² sĕd rŏgātum³ ĕt arcessītum³ ā Gallis; nōn sĭnĕ magna spe magnĭsquĕ praemiis dŏmum prŏpinquosquĕ rĕlīquisse: sēdes hăbēre ⁴ ĭn Gallia āb ipsis ⁵ concessas, ⁶ obsĭdes ipsōrum ⁶ vŏluntāte ² dătos; stīpendium căpĕre ⁴ jūre ⁷ belli,

quod⁸ victōres victis⁹ impōnĕre consuērint.¹⁰ 2. His Caesar ĭtă respondit: Eo¹¹ sĭbi mĭnŭs dŭbĭtātiōnis¹² dări, quŏd eas res, quas lēgāti Helvētii commĕmŏrassent,¹⁰ mĕmŏriā²¹ tĕnēret, atquĕ eo¹³ grăvius ferre, quo¹³ mĭnŭs mĕrĭto⁷ pŏpŭli Rōmāni accĭdissent: qui si¹⁴ alĭcūjus injūriae¹⁵ sĭbi ¹⁶ conscius fuisset, nōn fuisse diffĭcĭle căvēre¹⁷; sed eo¹¹ dēceptum,¹⁸ quod nĕque commissum¹⁹ a se intellĭgĕret, quāre tĭmēret, nĕque sĭne causa tĭmendum²⁰ pŭtāret.

Notes.

- ¹ A. & G. 188; A. & S. 438 (3): B. 269; B. & M. 658; G. 195, Remark 2: H. 441; C. 113, 7.
 - 2 See 79.

- 8 See 121 and Exs. 3 and 4.
- 4 hăbēre, capěre, sc. sē. 5 ipsis, sc. Gallis.
- 6 concessas, from concedo; ipsorum, their own.
- 7 The Ablative of Cause often designates that in accordance with which anything is done: jure, in accordance with the law.
 - 8 See 115.
- A. & G. 188; A. & S. 438 (2): B. 269; B. & M. 658; G. 195,
 REMARK 1: H. 441, 1; this rule includes Participles and Pronouns:
 C. 251, 8. For the case of victis, see 67.
 - 10 See Ln. LXXV., Note 11.
- 11 eo, for this reason.
- 12 See Ln. LXXXIII., Note 1.
- 13 See GEN. Vy. under eo.
- 14 qui sī, if they.
- 15 See 140.
- 16 See 86; translate, on their part.
- 17 See 129.

- 18 dēceptum, sc. essě sē.
- 19 commissum, sc. esse ăliquid.
- 20 timendum, sc. sibi esse, and see 130.
- 21 See 54.



LESSON LXXXVI.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (continued).

Write in Latin.

1. Caesar replies: The Romans have been so trained up by their fathers that they do not give hostages. 2. He in-

forms Caesar (that) the Helvetii are marching through the province because they have no other way. 3. He says (that) the Aquitania are hemmed in by the Pyrenees, which separate Aquitania from Spain. 4. We shall say many² (things): (that) we did not cross the Rhone of our own free will, but because³ we had been invited³ by the Sequani; we did not set out from home⁴ without great rewards; we have among the Helvētii large possessions, granted to us with their own⁵ consent;⁶ we levied tribute on the conquered⁷ in accordance with the law⁸ of war. 5. You said (that) you remembered those things which the Sequani had called to mind; that you had been deceived for this reason,⁹ that¹⁰ you had neither done anything for which¹¹ you should fear, nor did you think (that) you ought to fear¹² without a reason.

Notes.

1 See 139.

² See Ln. LXXXV., Note 1.

⁸ See 121 and Ex. 3.

4 See 107.

their own, ipsorum.See 67 and Ln. LXXXV., Note 9.

⁶ See **79**.

8 See Ln. LXXXV., Note 7.

9 for this reason, eo.

10 that, quod.

11 for which, quare.

12 See 130 and 131.

LESSON LXXXVII.

THE GERUND.

153. The Gerund. A. & G. 295: A. & S. 548 (1): B. 324: B. & M. 1319; 1321: G. 426; 427: H. 541; 542, I. -IV.: C. 252.

EXAMPLES.

1. Hostĭbus pugnandi pŏtestātem fēcit, he gave the enemy an opportunity for fighting.

- 2. Bellandi cupidi, fond of carrying on war.
- 3. Diem ăd dēlīběrandum sūmet, he will take a day for Deliberating.
- 4. Rěpěriēbat in quaerendo, he found on INQUIRING.
- 5. Studium pugnandi, a desire for fighting.

Analyze and parse.1

1. Qua de causa homines bellandi² cupidi magno dolore³ afficiēbantur. 2. His rēbus adducti et auctoritāte Orgētorigis permōti, constituērunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent,4 compărare. 3. Caesar legatis respondit, diem se ăd deliberandum sumptūrum.⁵ 4. Reperiebat in quaerendo Caesar initium ējus fugae factum⁵ ā Dumnŏrige atquĕ ējus ĕquĭtĭbus. 5. Caesar Divitiăcum consolatus rogat, finem orandi făciat.6 6. Ariovistus, quum neque aditum neque causam postulandi justam hăbēret,7 līběrālĭtāte8 sĕnātus ea praemia consĕcūtus est. 7. Caesar löquendi fīnem făcit sēque ăd suos 9 recipit. suisque imperavit ne quod 10 omnino telum in hostes rejicerent. 8. Multo 11 mājor ălacrītas stūdiumque pugnandi mājus exercĭtui injectum est. 9. Proximo die Caesar ăciem instruxit hostĭbusquĕ¹² pugnandi pŏtestātem fēcit.¹³ 10. Ită nostri⁹ acriter in hostes signo 14 dato impetum fecerunt, ut spatium pīla ĭn hostes conjĭciendi non dărētur.15

Write in Latin.

1. He says the Romans were fond of carrying on war.

2. We shall take ten days for deliberating.

3. We shall ask them to make 6 an end of entreating.

4. A much greater desire for carrying on war was infused into all of us. 16

5. They gave us an opportunity for strengthening peace with them.

6. We shall give them an opportunity for strengthening peace and friendship with us.

7. You will find on inquiring (that) we do not easily keep the enemy from our towns.

8. They

said you would find on inquiring (that) they do not easily keep the enemy from their cities. 9. We made an end of speaking and betook ourselves to our (friends). 10. Although we had no just cause for asking, we obtained many things 17 by reason of your generosity.8

Notes.

- 1 Parse the Gerunds like nouns. 2 See 140.
- ³ A. & G. 248, R.: A. & S. 410 (2): B. 259, Rule XLIV.: B. & M. 873: G. 401: H. 419, III.: C. 166, 1.
- ⁴ A. & G. **320**: A. & S. **500** (2), (d): B. **301**: B. & M. *1218*: G. **633**: H. **500**, I.: C. **223**, 1.
 - 5 esse is often omitted from the compound forms of the Infinitive.
- ⁶ See 136 and Ln. XXXVIII., Note 3; **ŭt**, as here, is sometimes omitted.
 - 7 See 145.
 - 9 See Ln. LXXXV., Note 9.
 - 11 See 144.
 - 13 See EXAMPLE 1.
 - 15 See 139.
 - 17 See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.
- 8 See 79.
- 10 See 116, second part.
- 12 See 39.
- 14 See 122 and Ex. 2, b.
- 16 all of us, omnibus nobis; see 67.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

---∞;∞;∞----

THE GERUNDIVE.

154. The Gerundive. A. & G. 296: A. & S. 548 (2); 550: B. 325, Rule LXXVI.: B. & M. 1322: G. 428: H. 543: C. 252.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Ad minuendam gratiam, for diminishing popularity.
- 2. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgētŏrix dēlĭgĭtur, Orgetorix is chosen to execute these plans.
- 3. Spem regni obtinendi, the hope of obtaining the sovereignty.
- Dătă făcultăte ĭtinĕris făciendi, if an opportunity for marching should be granted.

Analyze, and parse.

1. Quibus opibus āc nervis non solum ad minuendam² grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. 2. Ipse in cĭtĕriōrem Galliam ăd conventus ăgendos profectus est. 3. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi sătis esse duxerunt. 4. In Gallia ăb his, qui ăd conducendos homines făcultates hăbebant, regna occupābantur. 5. Ea, quae ad effeminandos ănimos pertinent, important. 6. Decima legio se esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit. 7. Ariovistus dixit omnes Galliae cīvitātes ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse. 8. Frūmentum omne, praeterquăm quod sēcum portatūri ĕrant,5 combūrunt, ŭt dŏmŭm6 rĕdĭtiōnis spe7 sublāta8 părātiōres ăd omnia pericula subeunda essent. 9. Liscus dicit si quid accĭdat9 Romānis, summam ĭn spem 10 per Helvētios regni obtĭnendi Dumnörigem venire. 10. Hac oratione habita 11 summa ălacritas ĕt cupiditas belli gerendi innata est. 11. Neque homines inimico animo, 12 data facultate per provinciam itineris făciendī, temperatūros 13 ăb injūria et măleficio existimavit. 12. Hoc proelio facto reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, 14 pontem in Arare făciendum cūrat 15 atque îtă exercĭtum trādūcit.

Write in Latin.

1. We consider two days sufficient for collecting the men.
2. They thought five days were sufficient for destroying the city.
3. We entertain 10 the highest hope of establishing friendship with all.
4. He says he entertains the highest hope of establishing friendship with the Gauls if anything happens 9 to us.
5. An opportunity for marching through entire Gaul was granted the Romans.
6. A very great desire for obtaining the sovereignty was infused into Dumnorix.
7. Let us not import 16 those things which tend to enervate the mind.
8. Let us do that which tends to strengthen peace

with all men. 9. Caesar said that entire Germany had come to attack him. 10. We shall burn up our villages, that we may be more ready to endure all perils.

Notes.

- 1 See 104.
- ² Translate the Gerundives like Gerunds (see Ex. 1); parse them like adjectives.
 - ⁸ grātiam, sc. suam.
 - 4 ütërëtur, translate by the Indicative.
 - ⁵ See Ln. LXX., Ex. 2.
- ⁶ See 105; domum limits the idea of motion in the verbal noun reditionis.
 - 7 See 122.

- 8 From tollo.
- 9 accidat, translate by the Indicative; why is it in the Subjunctive? (152)
 - 10 in spem věnio, I entertain the hope.
 - 11 See Ln. LXIV., Note 2.
- 12 See 144, a.
- 13 See Ln. LXXXVII., NOTE 5.
- 14 See 136.
- 15 pontem curat, he attends to building a bridge over the Saône; lit., he cares for a bridge to be built, etc. How is Saône pronounced?

¹⁶ See 134.



LESSON LXXXIX.

THE SUPINE.

155. The Supine. A. & G. 302; 303: A. & S. 554 (2); 555: B. 326, RULES LXXVII. and LXXVIII.: B. & M. 1360; 1365: G. 435-437: H. 546-547: C. 253; 254.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. Lēgātos mittunt rŏgātum auxilium, they send legates to ASK FOR aid.
- 2. Perfăcile factū, very easy to Do.

Analyze and parse.

1. Aedui, quum sē suăquě ab iis dēfenděre non possent,2 lēgātos ăd Caesărem mittunt rogātum auxilium. Helvētiorum confecto totīus fere Galliae legāti, principes cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt. 3. Lēgāti ăb Aeduis et ā Trēviris veniebant; Aedui4 questum quod Harūdes, qui nūper in Galliam transportāti essent,5 fīnes eōrum pŏpŭlārentur²; sēsē nē obsĭdĭbus quĭdĕm dătis pācem Ariovisti redimere potuisse. 4. Divitiacus dixit ob eam rem sē ex cīvĭtāte profūgisse et Romam6 ad senātum vēnisse auxĭlium postulātum, quod solus neque jūrejūrando neque obsidibus těnērētur. 5. Liscus dīcit Dumnŏrigem ipsum ex Helvētiis uxōrem hăbēre, sŏrōrem ex matre7 ĕt prŏpinquas suas nuptum in alias cīvitates collocasse. 6. Hostis8 est uxor invīta9 quae ăd vīrum nuptum dătur. 7. Perfăcile factū esse illis probat conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtentūrus esset.10

Write in Latin.

1. We have sent legates to the general to ask for troops.

2. We shall send a legate to you to ask for aid.

3. Since we cannot ² defend ourselves and our possessions ¹¹ from the enemy, we shall send legates to Geneva ⁶ to ask for aid.

4. We shall go to the consuls to congratulate (them).

5. Let us go to the praetor to congratulate (him).

6. Ambassadors came from all the states; the Gauls to complain because the Germans had crossed ² the Rhine to attack ¹² their towns; (saying that) not even after a pledge ¹³ had been given were they able to establish peace.

7. You are attempting that which is not very easy to do.

8. He shows (that) to march through the enemy's territory is (a thing) not easy to do.

Notes.

- ¹ See A. & G. **19**, c: A. & S. **35**: B. **24**, Exc. **3**: B. & M. **21**: G. **14**, Remark 1: H. **18**, **2**, 1): C. **11**.
 - ² See **149**.

³ See 25.

- 4 Aedui, sc. věniēbant.
- ⁵ See A. & G. **342**: A. & S. **523**: B. **310**, Rule LXIX.: B. & M. **1291**: G. **666**: H. **529**, H. : C. **226**.
 - 6 See 105.
 - 7 sörörem ex matre, his half-sister. 8 See 64.
 - 9 invita, against her will; it modifies quae.
 - 10 See Ln. LXX. and 149.
- 11 See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.
- ¹² See **155**. ¹³ See **122**.



LESSON XC.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR. - ABBREVIATIONS.

156. The Calendar. A. & G. Note, 376, a-d: A. & S. 660 (1)-(4), a, b, Notes 1, 2, (5), a: B. 374, a-c: B. & M. 1524-1537: G. Appendix, page 387: H. 641-645: C. 313.

157. Abbreviations. A. & G. 80, a-d: A. & S. 666, d; B. 373: B. & M. 1538-1542: H. 649-650: C. 317, 1.

VOCABULARY.

Jānuāriŭs, ă, ŭm, (Jān.)
Februāriŭs, ă, ŭm, (Febr.)
Martiŭs, ă, ŭm, (Mart.)
Aprīlis, ĕ, (Apr.)
Māiŭs, ă, ŭm, (Māi.)
Jūniŭs, ă, ŭm, (Jūn.)
Quintīlis, ĕ, (Quint.)
Sextīlīs, ĕ, (Sext.)
Septembĕr, brīs, brĕ, (Sept.)
Octōbĕr, brīs, brĕ, (Oct.)
Nŏvembĕr, brīs, brĕ, (Nŏv.)
Dĕcembĕr, brīs, brĕ, (Děc.)

of January.
of February.
of March.
of April.

of May.
of June.
of July.

of August.
of September.
of October.

of November.

of December.

Kălendae, ārŭm, (Kăl.) f. pl., Calends; the first day of the Roman month.

Nonae, ārum, (Non.) f. pl. Nones; the 7th of March, May, July, and October, and the 5th of the other months.

Idūs, uum, (Id.) f. pl.,

Ides; the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and the 13th of the other months.

prīdiē, (pr. or prīd.) adv., the day before.

Pronounce the abbreviated words as if they were printed in full.

1. Gĕnāvam Kălendis¹ ipsis Nŏvembrĭbus² occŭpābit. 2. Qui dies ĕrit a. d. VI. Kăl. Nov.3 (antĕ diem sextum Kălendas Novembres). 3. C.4 Jūlius Caesar Idibus Martiis occīsus est. 4. M. Tullius Cicero a. d. III. Non. Jan. natus est. 5. P. Scīpio a. d. XVII. Kăl. Māi. mortuus est. 6. Ap. Claudius a. d. II. Non. Apr. in senatu locutus est. 7. Ti. Gracchus Nonis Jūniis Romā⁵ profectus est. 8. M. Mānīlius ăd Rōmam profectus est a. d. VI. Id. Sext. 9. Multa verba ōrātōres făciunt a. d. IV. Non. Quint. 10. C. Caesar prid. Non.6 Febr. castra movit. 11. Dixi ego in senatu caedem te contŭlisse⁷ princĭpum ĭn a. d. V. Kăl. Nŏv. 12. Caedem principum contulisti ex a. d. V. Kal. Dec. ad pr. Kal.6 Jan. 13. T. Labiēnus prīd. Id.6 Sept. hostes superāvit. 14. Is dies ĕrat a. d. V. Kăl. Apr. L. Pīsone A. Găbīnio consŭlĭbus.8 15. Sī quid vellent, ăd Id. Apr. reverterentur. 16. Horum est nēmo qui nesciat9 tē prīd. Kăl.6 Jān. stětisse ĭn cŏmĭtio cum telo.

Imitate in Abbreviations the preceding Latin exercises.

Gaius Cassius was born on the 31st of October.
 Marcus Flaccus died on the 4th of May.
 Gaius Gracchus was killed on the 25th of January.
 Titus Labienus set out from Geneva on the 15th of July.
 Tiberius Gracchus will

break up camp on the 12th of February. 6. Lucius Piso was elected on the 1st of December. 7. That day was the 16th of April, when Lucius Cassius and Appius Claudius were consuls.⁸ 8. If you wish anything, return on the 13th of June. 9. He put off the murder of the consuls to the 30th of November. 10. There was no one of these who did not know⁹ that you stood in the Comitium on the 20th of August.

Notes.

- ⁸ Such an expression as antě diem sextum Kălendas Növembres is treated as a *single word*; hence it is often used like an Ablative of Time, as in sentence 4; like a Predicate Substantive, as in sentence 2; or it is governed by the prepositions in, ex, and rarely by ăd, as in sentences 11 and 12.
 - 4 Gaius: Latin pronunciation, Gáh-yoos; English pronunciation, Gá-yus.
 - ⁵ See **107**.
- ⁶ See A. & G. **261**, α: A. & S. **660**, α, Note 1: B. & M. *1010*: H. **437**, 1: C. **313**, 3, at end.
 - 7 From confěro.

8 See 122.

⁹ A. & G. 320: A. & S. 500, a: B. 301, 5: B. & M. 1218: G. 634: H. 503, 1: C. 223, 3.



LESSON XCI.

GENERAL EXERCISE.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. prima luce, at daybreak, at earliest dawn.
- 2. multo die, late in the day.
- 3. prima nocte, in the first part of the night.
- 4. ăd multam noctem, till late at night.
- 5. prīdiē ējŭs diēi, on the day before.
- 6. postrīdiē ējus diēi, on the following day.

¹ See 111.

² The Latin names of months are adjectives.

Translate and parse.

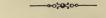
1. Prīma lūce, quum summus mons ā T. Labieno teneretur,2 ipse ăb hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus³ abesset, Considius ĕquo⁴ admisso ăd eum accurrit, dīcit montem, quem ā Lăbiēno occupāri voluĕrit,5 ab hostībus těnēri. 2. Multo dēniquě die pěr exploratores Caesar cognovit et montem a suis teneri et Helvetios castra movisse et Considium timore perterritum, quod non vidisset, pro viso sibi rěnunciasse. 3. Circiter hominum milia sex prima nocte ē castris Helvētiorum egressi ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contendērunt. 4. Ad multam noctěm ětiam ad impědimenta pugnātum est, proptěreā quod pro vallo carros objecerant. 5. Colloquendi⁸ Caesări causă visa non est, et eo⁹ măgis, quod prīdiē ejus diēi 10 Germāni retinēri non poterant, quīn 11 in nostros tēla conjīcerent. 11 6. Postrīdie ējus diei 10 praeter castra Caesăris suas copias trāduxit et mīlibus12 passuum duobus ultrā eum castra fēcit. 7. Postrīdiē ējus diēi Caesar praesidium utrisque castris, quod sătis esse visum est, reliquit.

Write in Latin.

1. The cavalry hastened to the city at full speed, ¹³ and pitched their camp at daybreak not farther than nine miles from ours. 2. We ascertained late in the day that the top of the mountain was held by the Sequani. 3. We set out on the day before at earliest dawn, hastened at full speed, and arrived at sunset in the vicinity of Geneva. 4. They set out in the first part of the night and arrived in the territory of the Gauls on the following day at earliest dawn. 5. We stayed at home on the fourth of July till late at night. 6. The reason for holding a conference ⁸ does not seem good to us, and the more ⁹ because the Romans cannot be restrained from hurling ¹¹ missiles upon our men. 7. We shall leave for both camps a garrison which will seem to be sufficient.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ What is the literal meaning of **prima luce**? Why is the Ablative used? ² Why is the Subjunctive used? See A. & G. 325: A. & S. 509, a:
- B. 304, RULE LXV.: B. & M. 1244: G. 581, II.: H. 521, II., 2: C. 214, 5.
 - 8 See 133.
 - 4 See 122; what is the literal meaning of equo admisso?
- ⁵ What mood is voluërit? Why is that mood used in this clause? See 152.
 - 6 See LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.
 - 7 See Ln. LXXXIII., Note 1. 8 See 153.
 - 9 eo magis, the more; for eo, see 79.
- ¹⁰ See A. & G. **214**, g on p. 208: A. & S. **355** b: B. & M. **1005**: H. **398**, 5: C. **133**, 7, 1.
- 11 quin—conjicerent, from hurling; why is the Imperfect used? See 135; why is the Subjunctive used? See A. & G. 319, d: A. & S. 493, (2): B. 297, RULE LX.: B. & M. 1218: G. 551: H. 504: C. 211.
 - 12 See 147.
 - 13 at full speed, equis admissis; why the Plural?



LESSON XCII.

GENERAL EXERCISE.

EXAMPLES.

- 1. plūs posse, to be more powerful.
- 2. plūrimum posse, to be the most powerful, or to be very powerful.
- 3. ei grātias ăgĕre, to thank him.
- 4. nobis est in animo iter facere, we intend to march.
- 5. lătere ăperto, on the unprotected flank.
- 6. ex ĕquis, on horseback.
- 7. měmoria těnere, to remember.
- 8. maximis potest itineribus, by the longest possible marches.

Translate and parse.

1. Liscus dīcit esse nonnullos, qui prīvātim plus 1 possint² quam ipsi magistrātus. 2. Non erat dubium, quin totīus Galliae plūrimum¹ Helvētii possent.³ 3. Dumnŏrix grātiā ĕt largītione apud Sēquanos plūrimum poterat. 4. Divitiacus dixit eos, qui ĕt sua virtūte ĕt pŏpŭli Rōmāni hospĭtio atquĕ ămīcītia plūrīmum ante in Gallia potuissent,2 coactos esse4 Sēquanis obsides dare. 5. Decima legio per tribunos mīlitum ei grātias ēgit. 6. Caesări renunciatur Helvētiis esse ĭn ănimo per agrum Sequănorum et Aeduorum iter in Santonum fines făcere. 7. Helvetii legătos ăd eum mittunt qui dīcerent9 sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam făcere. 8. Pars ăperto lătere 10 legiones circumvenīre coepit.¹¹ 9. Capto monte ¹² Boii et Tulingi nostros lătere ăperto aggressi circumvěnīre coepērunt. 10. Ariovistus, ex ĕquis ŭt collŏquĕrentur 13 ĕt praeter sē dēnos ŭt ăd collŏquium addūcerent, 18 postulāvit. 11. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallos obtınēre dictum est,14 attingit ab 15 Sēquanis et Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnum. 12. Id16 hōc făcĭlius eis persuāsit, quŏd undĭquĕ lŏci nātūrā Helvētii contĭnentur. 13. Mōrĭbus 17 suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis 18 causam dīcere coegerunt; damnātum ¹⁹ poenam sĕqui ŏportēbat,²⁰ ŭt igni crĕmārētur. 14. Caesar, quod memoria 21 tenebat 22 L. Cassium consulem occisum exercitumque ejus ab Helvētiis pulsum23 et sub jugum missum,23 concēdendum24 non pǔtābat. 15. Caesări quǔm id25 nunciātum esset,26 eos per provinciam nostram iter făcere conāri,27 mātūrat ab urbe proficisci et quam maximis potest ĭtĭnĕrĭbus²¹ ĭn Galliam ultĕriōrem contendit ĕt ăd Gĕnēvam pervenit. 16. Ităque re12 frumentaria quam celerrime potuit compărata magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit. -17. Liscus dīcit Dumnŏrĭgem complūres annos28 portōria rělĭquăque²⁹ omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvo prětio rědempta hăbēre,30 proptěreā quod illo 12 licente contra liceri audeat31 nēmo.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ See A. & G. 240, a: A. & S. 397: B. 222, RULE XIII.: B. & M. 728: G. 331, REMARKS 2 and 3: H. 378: C. 128, 2.
 - 2 Why is the Subjunctive used in this clause? See 152.
 - 8 Why the Subjunctive? See Ln. XCI., Note 11.
 - 4 From cogo.

- ⁵ See 39.
- 6 What is the subject of renunciatur? What is it that is reported to Caesar?
- 7 See 137; what is it that the Helvetii intend (have in mind) to do? What then is the subject of esse?
 - 8 See Ln. LXXXII., Note 1.
 - 9 See 136 and Example 10; what question does qui dicerent answer?
 - 10 latere is an Ablative of Place, answering the question Where?
 - 11 What kind of a verb is coepit? See 127.
 - 12 See 122.

- 13 See 136 and Example 9.
- 14 What is the subject of dictum est?
- 15 ab, on the side of.
- ¹⁶ id quod, he persuaded them to this the more easily, because; lit., he persuaded this to them, etc.; for hoc, see 79.
 - 17 See Ln. LXXXV., Note 7.
 - 18 ex vinculis, in chains; what is its literal meaning?
- 19 damnātum, if condemned; see 121; it modifies eum understood, the object of sequi.
- 20 What kind of a verb is oportebat? See 128; what is its subject? See LN. LXIX., EXAMPLES 6 and 7.
 - 21 See 54.
- 22 What-kind of a clause is quod tenebat? See 149; what is the object of tenebat?
 - ²³ See Ln. LXXXVII., Note 5.
 - 24 concedendum, sc. esse; translate, that it ought to be granted.
 - 25 To what does id refer? What had been reported to Caesar?
 - ²⁶ See Ln. XCI., Note 2. 27 conari is in apposition with id. ²⁹ See Ln. LXXXIX., Note 1.
 - 28 See 93.
 - 30 rědempta hăběre, had bought up.
- 31 What kind of a verb is audeat? See A. & G. 136: A. & S. 196, a. B. 110, a: B. & M. 312: G. 182; H. 268, 3: C. 81, 1.

SELECTIONS FOR READING.

I. FABLES.

1. The Mouse and the Kite.

Milvius laqueis irretītus musculum exorāvit, ut eum, corrōsis plagis, liberāret. Quo facto, milvius liberātus murem arripuit et devorāvit.

Haec fabula ostendit, quam gratiam mali pro beneficiis reddere soleant.

2. The Kid and the Wolf.

Haedus, stans in tecto domus, lupo praetereunti maledixit. Cui lupus, Non tu, inquit, sed tectum mihi maledīcit.

Saepe locus et tempus homines timidos audāces reddit.

3. The Crane and the Peacock.

Pavo, coram grue pennas suas explicans, Quanta est, inquit, formositas mea et tua deformitas! At grus evolans, Et quanta est, inquit, levitas mea et tua tarditas!

Monet haec fabŭla, ne ob alĭquod bonum, quod nobis natūra tribuit, alíos contemnāmus, quibus natūra alia et fortasse majora dedit.

4. The Goat and the Wolf.

Lupus capram in alta rupe stantem conspicatus, Cur non, inquit, relinquis nuda illa et sterilia loca, et huc descendis in herbidos campos, qui tibi laetum pabulum offerunt? Cui respondit capra: Mihi non est in animo dulcia tutis praeponere

5. The Dog in the Manger.

Canis jacēbat in praesēpi bovesque latrando a pabulo arcēbat. Cui unus boum, Quanta ista, inquit, invidia est, quod non pateris ut eo cibo vescāmur, quem tu ipse capere nec velis nec possis!

Haec fabula invidiae indolem declārat.

6. The Fox and the Lion.

Vulpes, quae nunquam leōnem vidĕrat, quum ei forte occurrisset, ita est perterrita, ut paene morerētur formidĭne. Eundem conspicāta itĕrum, timuit quidem, sed nequāquam, ut antea. Tertio illi obviam facta, ausa est etiam propius accedĕre eumque allŏqui.

7. The Oxen.

In eōdem prato pascebantur tres boves in maxima concordia, et sic ab omni ferārum incursiōne tuti erant. Sed dissidio inter illos orto, singŭli a feris petīti et laniāti sunt.

Fabula docet quantum boni sit in concordia.

8. The Ass in the Lion's Skin.

Asınus, pelle leonis indutus, territabat homines et bestias tamquam leo esset. Sed forte, dum se celerius movet, aures

eminebant; unde agnitus in pistrīnum abductus est, ubi poenas petulantiae dedit.

Haec fabula stolidos notat, qui immeritis honoribus superbiunt.

9. The Golden Egg.

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallīnam, quae ei quotidie ovum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicāri coepit, illam auri massam intus celāre, et gallīnam occīdit. Sed nihil in ea repĕrit, nisi quod in aliis gallīnis reperīri solet. Ităque dum majorībus divitiis inhiābat, etiam minōres perdĭdit.

10. The Travellers and the Ass.

Duo qui ună iter faciëbant, asĭnum oberrantem in solitudine conspicăti, accurrunt laeti, et uterque eum sibi vindicăre coepit, quod eum prior conspexisset. Dum vero contendunt et rixantur, nec a verberibus abstinent, asĭnus aufăgit et neuter eo potītur.

11. The Trumpeter.

Tubicen ab hostibus captus, Ne me, inquit, interficite; nam inermis sum, neque quidquam habeo praeter hanc tubam. At hostes, Propter hoc ipsum, inquiunt, te interimēmus, quod, quum ipse pugnandi sis imperītus, alios ad pugnam incitāre soles.

Fabula docet, non solum maleficos esse puniendos sed etiam eos, qui alios ad male faciendum irritent.

12. Sour Grapes.

Vulpes uvam in vite conspicāta ad illam subsiliit omnium virium suārum contentione, si eam forte attingere posset.

Tandem defatigāta ināni labore discēdens dixit: At nunc etiam acerbae sunt, nec eas in via repertas tollĕrem.

Haec fabula docet, multos ea contemnere, quae se assequi posse desperent.

13. The Mice.

Mures aliquando habuērunt consilium, quomodo sibi a fele cavērent. Multis aliis propositis, omnibus placuit ut ei tintinnabūlum annecterētur; sic enim ipsos sonitu admonitos eam fugere posse. Sed quum jam inter mures quaererētur, qui feli tintinnabūlum annecteret, nemo repertus est.

Fabula docet, in suadendo plurimos esse audāces, sed in ipso periculo timidos.

14. The Wolf and the Crane.

In faucibus lupi os inhaesĕrat. Mercēde igitur condūcit gruem, qui illud extrăhat. Hoc grus longitudine colli facile effēcit. Quum autem mercēdem postulāret, subrīdens lupus et dentibus infrendens, Num tibi, inquit, parva merces vidētur, quod caput incolūme ex lupi faucibus extraxisti?

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY.

Saturn.

1. Antiquissimis temporibus Saturnus in Italiam venisse dicitur. Ibi haud procul a Janiculo arcem condidit, eanque Saturniam appellāvit. Hic Italos primus agricultūram docuit.

Latinus and Aeneas.

2. Postea Latīnus in illis regionībus imperāvit. Sub hoc rege Troja in Asia eversa est. Hinc Aenēas, Anchīsae filius, cum multis Trojānis, quibus ferrum Graecōrum pepercĕrat, aufūgit et in Italiam pervēnit. Ibi Latīnus rex ei benigne recepto filiam Laviniam in matrimonium dedit. Aenēas urbem condĭdit, quam in honōrem conjŭgis Lavinium appellāvit.

Founding of Alba Longa by Ascanius.

3. Post Aenēae mortem Ascanius, Aenēae filius, regnum accēpit. Hic sedem regni in alium locum transtŭlit, urbemque condĭdit in monte Albāno, eamque Albam Longam nuncupāvit. Eum secūtus est Silvius, qui post Aenēae mortem a Lavinia genĭtus erat. Ejus postĕri omnes usque ad Romam condĭtam Albae regnavērunt.

Other Kings of Alba.

- 4. Unus horum regum, Romŭlus Silvius, se Jove majōrem esse dicēbat, et, quum tonāret, militĭbus imperāvit, ut clypeos hastis percutĕrent, dicebatque hunc sonum multo clariōrem esse quam tonitru. Fulmĭne ictus et in Albānum lacum praecipitātus est.
- 5. Silvius Procas, rex Albanōrum, duos filios relīquit Numitōrem et Amulium. Horum minor natu, Amulius, fratri optiōnem dedit, utrum regnum habēre vellet, an bona, quae pater reliquisset. Numĭtor paterna bona praetŭlit; Amulius regnum obtinuit.

Birth of Romulus and Remus.

6. Amulius, ut regnum firmissime possidēret, Numitōris filium per insidias interēmit et filiam fratris Rheam Silviam

Vestālem virgĭnem fecit. Nam his Vestae sacerdotĭbus non licet viro nubĕre. Sed haec a Marte gemĭnos filios Romŭlum et Remum pepĕrit. Hoc quum Amulius comperisset, matrem in vincŭla conjēcit, puĕros autem in Tibĕrim abjĭci jussit.

7. Forte Tiberis aqua ultra ripam se effuderat, et, quum pueri in vado essent positi, aqua refluens eos in sicco reliquit. Ad eorum vagitum lupa accurrit, eosque uberibus suis aluit. Quod videns Faustulus quidam, pastor illius regionis, pueros sustulit et uxori Accae Laurentiae nutriendos dedit.

Foundation of Rome, B. C. 753.

8. Sic Romŭlus et Remus pueritiam inter pastōres transegērunt. Quum adolevissent et forte comperissent quis ipsōrum avus, quae mater fuisset, Amulium interfecērunt et Numitōri avo regnum restituērunt. Tum urbem condidērunt in monte Aventīno quam Romŭlus a suo nomĭne Romam vocāvit. Haec quum moenĭbus circumdarētur, Remus occīsus est, dum fratrem irrīdens moenia transiliēbat.

How Romulus increased the Number of Citizens.

9. Romŭlus, ut civium numërum augēret, asylum patefēcit, ad quod multi ex civitatibus suis pulsi accurrērunt. Sed novae urbis civibus conjuges deĕrant. Festum ităque Neptūni et ludos instituit. Ad hos quum multi ex finitimis populis cum mulieribus et libĕris venissent, Romāni inter ipsos ludos spectantes virgines rapuērunt.

War with the Sabines. - Tarpeia.

10. Populi ilii, quorum virgines raptae erant, bellum adversus raptōres suscepērunt. Quum Romae appropinquārent, forte in Tarpēiam virginem incidērunt, quae in arce sacra pro-

curābat. Hanc rogābant, ut viam in arcem monstrāret, eīque permisērunt, ut munus sibi poscēret. Illa petiit, ut sibi darent, quod in sinistris manĭbus gerĕrent, ānŭlos aureos et armillas signifĭcans. At hostes in arcem ab ea perducti scutīs Tarpēiam obruērunt; nam et ea in sinistris manĭbus gerēbant.

Treaty with the Sabines.

11. Tum Romŭlus cum hoste, qui montem Tarpēium tenēbat, pugnam conseruit in eo loco, ubi nunc forum Romānum est. In media caede raptae processērunt, et hinc patres hinc conjŭges et socĕros complectebantur, et rogābant, ut caedis finem facĕrent. Utrīque his precĭbus commōti sunt. Romŭlus foedus icit et Sabīnos in urbem recēpit.

Institutions of Romulus. - His Death.

12. Postea civitātem descripsit. Centum senatōres legit eosque quum ob aetātem tum ob reverentiam iis debĭtam patres appellāvit. Plebem in triginta curias distribuit, easque raptārum nominĭbus nuncupāvit. Anno regni tricesĭmo septĭmo, quum exercitum lustrāret, inter tempestātem ortam repente ocŭlis homĭnum subductus est. Hinc alii eum a senatorībus interfectum, alii ad deos sublātum esse existimavērunt.

Reign of Numa Pompilius, B. C. 716 - 673.

13. Post Romŭli mortem unīus anni interregnum fuit. Quo elapso, Numa Pompilius Curibus, urbe in agro Sabinōrum, natus rex creātus est. Hic vir bellum quidem nullum gessit; nec minus tamen civitāti profuit. Nam et leges dedit, et sacra plurīma instituit, ut popūli barbāri et bellicōsi mores mollīret. Omnia autem, quae faciēbat, se nymphae Egeriae,

conjŭgis suæ, jussu facĕre dicēbat. Morbo decessit, quadragesĭmo tertio impĕri anno.

Reign of Tullus Hostilius, B. C. 673 - 641.

14. Numae successit Tullus Hostilius, cujus avus se in bello adversus Sabīnos fortem et strenuum virum praestitěrat. Rex creātus bellum Albānis indixit, idque trigeminōrum Horatiōrum et Curiatiōrum certamine finīvit. Albam propter perfidiam Metti Fufeti diruit. Quum triginta duōbus annis regnasset, fulmine ictus cum domo sua arsit.

Reign of Ancus Marcius, B. C. 640 - 616.

15. Post hunc Ancus Marcius, Numae ex filia nepos, suscēpit imperium. Hie vir aequitāte et religiōne avo simĭlis, Latīnos bello domuit, urbem ampliāvit, et nova ei moenia circumdědit. Carcĕrem primus aedificāvit. Ad Tibĕris ostia urbem condĭdit, Ostiamque vocāvit. Vicesĭmo quarto anno impĕri morbo obiit.

Reign of Tarquinius Priscus, B. C. 616 - 578.

- 16. Deinde regnum Lucius Tarquinius Priscus accēpit, Demarāti filius, qui tyrannos patriae Corinthi fugiens in Etruriam venērat. Ipse Tarquinius, qui nomen ab urbe Tarquiniis accēpit, aliquando Romam profectus erat. Advenienti aquĭla pileum abstŭlit, et, postquam alte evolavĕrat, reposuit. Hinc Tanăquil conjux, mulier auguriōrum perīta, regnum ei portendi intellexit.
- 17. Quum Romæ commorarētur, Anci regis familiaritātem consecūtus est, qui eum filiōrum suōrum tutōrem relīquit. Sed is pupillis regnum intercēpit. Senatorĭbus, quos Romŭlus creavĕrat, centum alios addĭdit, qui minōrum gentium sunt

appellāti. Plura bella feliciter gessit, nec paucos agros hostibus ademptos urbis territorio adjunxit. Primus triumphans urbem intrāvit. Cloācas fecit; Capitolium inchoāvit. Tricesimo octāvo impēri anno per Anci filios, quibus regnum eripuērat, occīsus est.

Reign of Servius Tullius, B. C. 578 - 534.

- 18. Post hunc Servius Tullius suscēpit imperium, genītus ex nobīli femīna, captīva tamen et famūla. Quum in domo Tarquini Prisci educarētur, flamma in ejus capīte visa est. Hoc prodigio Tanāquil ei summam dignitātem portendi intellexit, et conjūgi persuāsit, ut eum sicūti liberos suos educāret. Quum adolevisset, rex ei filiam in matrimonium dedit.
- 19. Quum Priscus Tarquinius occisus esset, Tanăquil de superiore parte domus populum allocuta est, dicens; regem grave quidem sed non letale vulnus accepisse; eum petere, ut populus, dum convaluisset, Servio Tullio obediret. Sic Servius regnare coepit, sed bene imperium administravit. Montes tres urbi adjunxit. Primus omnium censum ordinavit. Sub eo Roma habuit octoginta tria milia civium Romanorum cum his, qui in agris erant.
- 20. Hic rex interfectus est scelère filiae Tulliae et Tarquini Superbi, fili ejus regis, cui Servius successerat. Nam ab ipso Tarquinio de gradibus curiae dejectus, quum domum fugeret, interfectus est. Tullia in forum properavit, et prima conjugem regem salutavit. Quum domum rediret, aurīgam super patris corpus in via jacens carpentum agere jussit.

Reign of Tarquinius Superbus, the last king of Rome, B. C. 534-510.

21. Tarquinius Superbus cognōmen morĭbus meruit. Bello tamen strenuus plures finitimōrum populōrum vicit. Tem-

plum Jovis in Capitolio aedificāvit. Postea, dum Ardeam oppugnābat, urbem Lati, imperium perdĭdit. Nam quum filius ejus Lucretiae, nobilissĭmae femĭnae, conjŭgi Tarquini Collatīni, vim fecisset, haec se ipsam occīdit in conspectu marīti, patris, et amicōrum, postquam eos obtestāta fuĕrat, ut hanc injuriam ulciscerentur.

22. Hanc ob causam L. Brutus, Collatīnus, aliīque nonnulli in exitium regis conjurārunt, populōque persuasērunt, ut ei portas urbis claudĕret. Exercĭtus quoque, qui civitātem Ardeam cum rege oppugnābat, eum relīquit. Fugit itāque cum uxōre et libĕris suis. Ita Romae septem reges regnavērunt annos ducentos quadraginta tres.

NOTES ON THE SELECTIONS FOR READING.

The References are mainly to the Sections of this Book.

I. FABLES.

- 1. ut liberaret, see 136 and LN. XXXVIII., Note 3. corrosis plagis, by grawing the nets; see 122. quo, see 122; what is its antecedent? ostendit, what is its object? mali, see LN. LXXXV., Note 9. soleant, see 151 and LN. XCII., Note 31.
- 2. lupo, see 132. praetereunti (praeter and e0), see 126; translate the Participle by a Relative Clause. inquit, see A. & G. 144, b: A. & S. 249 (5): B. 111, c, 2: B. & M. 444: G. 190, 2: H. 297, II., 2: C. 86, 2. reddit, see A. & G. 205, b: A. & S. 320: B. 287, a: B. & M. 644: G. 281, EXCEPTION 2: H. 463, II., 2: C. 110, 2, b.
- 3. explicans, spreading. inquit, see note on inquit, Fable 2. aliquod, see 116, a. quod, see 34 and 115. contemnāmus, see 136. alia, majora, see LN. LXXXV., Note 1.
- 4. laetum, abundant. mihi, see 137. est, what is its subject? dulcia, see LN. LXXXV., Note 1. tutis, see 67.
- 5. boves, see A. & G. 61, page 33: A. & S. 110, bos: B. 138: B. & M. 123: G. 80: H. 66: C. 31.—latrando, see 153 and 54.—quod—

patěris, see 149.—cibo, see 54 and 104.—velīs, see 125 and LN. LXXXIX., Note 5.

6. occurrisset, see A. & G. 325; A. & S. 509, a: B. 304, RULE LXV.: B. & M. 1244: G. 581, II.: H. 521, II., 2: C. 214, 5.—moreretur, see 139.—nequaquam, antea, what do they modify?—obviam facta, having met; obviam is used with the Dative.—ausa est, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31.

7. pascebantur, what does the Imperfect Tense denote? see 36.—boves, see note on boves, Fable 5.—petiti, sc. sunt.—boni, see Ln. LXXXIII., Note 1.—sit, see 151.

8. pelle, see 54.—indutus, having clothed himself.—esset, see A. & G. 312: A. & S. 481, (2): G. 604: H. 513, II.: C. 220.—movet, see Ln. LXXXII., Note 11.—unde, for which reason, i. e. because his ears stuck out.—agnitus, from agnosco; render as if it were agnitus est, and supply and.—dedit, suffered.—honoribus, see 79.

9. suspicari, see 69.—coepit, see 127.—illam, why in the Accusative? why Feminine?—quod is here equivalent to id quod; compare the English what, equivalent to that which.—solet, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31.—majoribus, see 84 and 85.—divitiis, see 67.—minores, what does it modify?

10. duo, see 108 and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.—accurrent, see LN. LXXXII., NOTE 1.—laeti, joyfully; see A. & G. 191; A. & S. 557, h: B. 270, b: B. & M. 663: G. 324, REMARK 6: H. 443: C. 113, 6.—prior, see note on laeti; the comparative is used when two only are mentioned.—conspexisset, see 149.—eo, see 104.

11. tubicen, what is its derivation? see GEN. Vy.—inquit, see note on inquit, Fable 2.—interficite, see 47.—inermis, derivation? see GEN. Vy.—propter hoc ipsum, for this very reason; what is the reason?—pugnandi, see 153 and 140.—sis, see 145.—soles, see LN. XCII., Note 31.—esse puniendos, see 130.—eos, why in the Accusative?—irritent, see A. & G. 320: A. & S. 500, (2), (d): B. 301: B. & M. 1220, b: G. 633: H. 500, I.: C. 223, 1.

12. vulpes, see A. & G. 30, b: A. & S. 84: B. 118, III., REM. 2: B. & M. 41: G. 20, 3: H. 43, 3: C. 13, I., 3.—omnium—contentione, with all its might; what is the literal translation? for the Abl. contentione, see 54.—Si, (to see) whether.—posset, see 151.—repertas, from reperio; see 121.—tollerem, see 143 and A. & G. 310, a; A. & S. 477, e: B. 305, third clause: G. 594, 2: H. 507, Note 7: C. 219; 250.—quae, see 34.—se, see 53.—desperent, see note on irritent, Fable 11.

13. quomodo, (to see) by what means. — sibi, see A. & G. 227, c: A. & S. 378; B. 239; B. & M. 836; G. 347; H. 385, 1; C. 160. — caverent.

see 151. — aliis, see Ln. LXXXV., Note 1 and 122. — placuit, what is its subject? — annecterētur, see A. & G. 332, a: A. & S. 494, a: B. 301, Rule LXII.: B. & M. 1222: G. 558: H. 501, I., 1: C. 208. — sic — posse; this Infinitive Clause depends upon some such expression as they thought, they said. — quaererētur, see note on occurrisset, Fable 6; what is the subject of quaererētur? — suadēndo, see 153. — plurīmos, see 85 and Ln. LXXXV., Note 9.

14. inhaesĕrat, from inhaerec. — mercēde, see 146. — extrahat, see 136. — hoc, what was this that the crane accomplished? — postulāret, see note on occurrisset, Fable 6. — num, what answer is implied? See Ln. LXI., Note 1. — merces, see 64. — vidētur, what is its subject? — faucībus, how declined in the Singular? in the Plural? See Gen. Vy.

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY.

- 1. Janiculo, the Janiculum is a hill on the west side of the Tiber; the seven hills are on the east side; these are the Palatine, Capitoline, Quirinal, Aventine, Coelian, Esquiline, and Viminal.—eam Saturniam, see 58.—Itālos, agricultūram, see 71.—primus—docuit, was the first who taught; see A. & G. 191: A. & S. 557 h: B. 271, REMARK: B. & M. 663: G. 324, 7: H. 442, NOTE: C. 113, 6, note 1.
- 2. in—regionibus; what country is meant?—sub, in the reign of.—
 Troja, Troy is said to have been destroyed in B. C. 1184.—hinc, from this
 place, i. e. from Troy.—Aeneae, Anchisae, how declined? See A. & G. 37:
 A. & S. 94: B. 125: B. & M. 52: G. 72: H. 50: C. 20.—quibus, see
 132.—Lavinium was situated about 16 miles south of Rome, three miles
 from the coast.
- 3. Aeneae, see note on Aeneae in preceding section. transtulit, see 123. Albam Longam, Alba Longa was about 16 miles southeast of Rome, situated on the western slope of the Alban Mount and overlooking the Alban Lake. secutus est, succeeded. genus erat, from gigno. ad Romam condutam, until the founding of Rome; what is the literal translation? Albae, see 106.
- 4. Jove, see 133 and A. & G. 60, b, page 32: A. & S. 111, (3): B. 138: B. & M. 123: H. 66, 3: C. 31. tonāret, see 128 and note on occurrisset, Fable 6. multo, see 144. tonitru, what case? why?—ictus, sc. est. Albānum Lacum, see note on Albam Longam in section 3.
- 5. minor natu = junior; for natu, see 124. vellet, see 125 and 151. reliquisset, see LN. LXXXIX., Note 5.

- 6. vestalem virginem, a vestal virgin was bound by a vow of chastity; if she broke her vow she was buried alive. licet, what is its subject? viro nuběre, to marry; for viro, see 132; what does nuběre mean? pepěrit, from pario. hoc, what was it that Amulius had found out?
- 7. essent positi, see A. & G. 326: A. & S. 510 (2): B. 302, 1: B. & M. 1251: G. 587: H. 517: C. 214, 3. quod, what is its antecedent? what did a certain Faustulus see?—regionis, what region is meant?—nutriendos, to be nourished, modifies pueros, and expresses the purpose of dedit.
- 8. adolevissent, from adolesco; see note on occurrisset, Fable 6.—quis, see 64.—avus, sc. fuisset and see 151.—monte Aventino, Mount Aventine, one of the seven hills of Rome. The best authorities agree that Rome was built at first on the Palatine, which hill stands a short distance northeast of the Aventine.
- civibus, see A. & G. 231, a: A. & S. 380: B. 242, Rem. 3: B.
 M. 820: H. 386: C. 154.—inter, in the midst of.—ipsos, very.—spectantes, translate by a relative clause.
- 10. Romae, see 67. in inciderunt, they came unexpectedly upon. quod, see note on quod, Fable 9. gererent, see Ln. LXXXIX., Note 5. et ea, these also, i. e. as well as the rings and bracelets.
- 11. Montem Tarpeium, the Tarpeian mount; probably the Capitoline hill.—forum Romanum, the Roman Forum, an open space in the valley between the Capitoline and Palatine, surrounded by temples and other buildings; here the Roman people, the Populus Romanus, met to transact business.—media, midst of.—raptae, sc. mulières.—hinc—hinc, here—there.—utrique, who are meant?—icit, compare the English expression, strike a bargain; the Romans were accustomed to offer a sacrifice to confirm a treaty, and hence this use of ico.
- 12. quum tum, both and. raptārum, sc. muliĕrum. inter, in the midst of. ortam, which had arisen. oculis, see 67. hine, i. e. by reason of the fact mentioned in the preceding sentence. alii alii, some others. interfectum, sc. esse. sublātum esse from tollo.
- 13. quo, what is its antecedent?—Curibus, see 106.—jussu, see 79. facere, what is its object?—morbo decessit, i. e. Numa died a natural death, which has not always been the lot of kings; with decessit supply de vita.
- 14. praestiterat, what does it govern? see 58.—creatus, see I.N. LXIII. and Examples.—Horatiorum. The Horatii fought for Rome, the Curiatii for Alba. The three Curiatii fell, but one of the Horatii survived; this gave the victory to the Romans.—Metti Fufeti, see 17; for his treachery he was torn asunder by horses driven in opposite directions, and his city Alba razed to the ground. The inhabitants of Alba were removed

to Rome and located on the Caelian Hill; this was the origin of the Roman *Plebs.*—annis expresses duration of time; what is the more usual construction? see 93.—arsit, fr. ardeo, ardere, arsi, arsum, burn.

- 15. aequitate, see 124.—avo, see 86.—bello, see 54.—ei, see A. & G. 225, d: A. & S. 379: B. 242, Rem. 3; B. & M. 859: G. 348: H. 384, II., 2: C. 152.—primus, see note on primus, section 1.—obiit, see 126 and note on morbo decessit, section 13.
- 16. deinde, i. e. after the death of Ancus Marcius.—qui refers to Demarāti.—advenienti, sc. ei and see A. & G. 223: A. & S. 380: B. 242, Rem. 3: B. & M. 829: H. 386, 2: C. 151.—abstălit from aufero, auferre, abstăli, ablātum, carry off; derived from ab away, off; and fero carry.—auguriōrum, see 140.
- 17. Romae, see 106.—commorarētur, see note on occurrisset, Fable 6.—tutōrem, as guardian; compare 58.—pupillis, see 67.—gentium modifies senatōres understood.—plura, several; how declined? See LN. LXXXIV., Note 11.—ademptos, from adimo.—primus, see note on primus, section 1.—Cloācas. The main sewer, known as the Cloaca Maxima, and a branch running from the Forum are still in use.—Capitolium, the Capitol, signifies here the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline.—per filios, at the instigation of the sons; they hired assassins to murder him: ā filiis would signify that they killed him with their own hands.—quibus, see note on ei, section 16.
- 18. genitus, from gigno. captiva, see 25. domo, how declined? See 97. conjugi, see 132 and Ex. 1. educaret, see 136.
- 19. domus; this stood on the Palatine. regem obediret; change this to the Direct Discourse; see 152. eam refers to regem. coepit, see 127. montes adjunxit. The Palatine, Capitoline, Quirinal, and Aventine had been previously occupied. milia, how declined? see 108. civium, see LN. LXXXIII., Note 1.
- 20. scelere, see 79. filiae, see 25. curiae. The senate-house stood near the Forum. domum, see 105; how declined? prima, see note on primus, section 1. regem, as king; compare 58.
- 21. cognomen, i. e. Superbus, the Proud. moribus, see 79. bello, see 111. plures, how declined? see note on plura, section 17. populorum, see Ln. LXXXIII., Note 1. Templum. This temple had been begun by Tarquinius Priscus; see section 17. Jovis, how declined? see note on Jove, section 4. Lucretiae, see 39. vim, how declined? See Gen. Vy. ut ulciscerentur, see 136 and Ln. XXXVIII., Note 3.
- 22. in, for. conjurărunt, see LN. LXXV., Note 11. populo, see 132. ei, against him; see 39. civitătem = urbem. Ardea was situated about 18 miles south of Rome.

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

I. Latin-English.

Numerals and Pronouns not given in this Vocabulary can be found in the Grammar.

The References are to Sections of this book.

The English words in SMALL CAPITALS are derived either directly or indirectly from the Latin words under which they stand, or from the same Root.

The parts in Parentheses give the derivation of the Latin words. For Abbreviations see page xii.

A.

- A., abbreviation of Aulus, a Roman praenomen.
- ab, a, prep. w. abl. from, away from; by: on the side of.
- ab-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (ab away, duco lead), lead away. Abduct, Abduction.
- ab-jicio, jicere, jeci, jectum (ab away, down; jacio cast), cast away or down. Abject.
- abs-tineo, tinere, tinui, tentum (ab(s) from, teneo keep), keep from, Abstain. Abstinence.
- ab-sum, esse, fui (ab away, sum be) be away, be Absent, be distant.
- āc. See atquě.

- Accă, ae, f., Acca Lārentia, the wife of Faustulus.
- ac-cēdo, cēděrě, cessī, cessīm (ad towards, cedo go), go towards, draw near, approach; assault. Accede, Accession.
- ac-cido, cidere, cidi (ad upon, cado fall), fall upon, befall, happen. Accident.
- ac-cipio, cipere, cepi, ceptum (ad to one's self, capio take), receive, ACCEPT, take.
- ac-curro, currere, cucurri and curri, cursum (ad to, curro run), run to, hasten to.
- accūso, ārĕ, āvī, atŭm (ad to, causa a lawsuit), Accuse, blame, censure. Accusation.
- ācĕr, ācrĭs, ācrĕ, sharp. Acrid.

- ăcerbus, ă, um, sour. Acerbity. ăciēs, ăciēi, f., edge; line, line of battle; army in battle-array. See agmen.
- ācrītěr, ācrīts, ācerrīmē, adv. (acer sharp), sharply, fiercely, violently.
- ăd, prep. w. acc. to, towards; for; near; w. numerals, about; w. names of towns, towards, in or into the vicinity of.
- ăd-ămo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ad denoting a beginning, amo love), begin to love, acquire a liking for.
- ad-do, děrě, dĭdī, dĭtŭm (ad to, beside; do put), ADD.
- ad-duco, ducere, duxi, ductum (ad to, duco lead), lead to, lead; influence.
- ăd-eo, îrĕ, iī, ĭtŭm (ad to, eo go), go to. See 126.
- ăd-imo, imere, ēmī, emptum (ad to one's self, emo take), take away.
- ždĭtŭs, ūs, m. (adeo go to), approach, access.
- ad-jungo, jungërë, junxī, junctum (ad to, jungo join), join to, join.
- ad-ministro, ārē, āvī, ātum (ad without additional force, ministro serve), Administer, manage. Administration, Administrator.
- ad-mitto, mittěrě, mīsī, missüm (ad to, mitto let go), allow, Ad-MIT; give the reins to; equo admisso, at full speed. Ad-MISSION.

- ad-moneo, monere, monui, monitum (ad w. no perceptible additional force, moneo admonish), Admonish, warn. Admonition.
- ădolesco, adolescere, ădolevi, ădultăm (adoleo cause to grow up), grow, increase, grow up. Adult.
- ad-sum, ad-esse, af-fui (ad near, sum be), be near, be present: assist.
- ad-věnio, venīrě, vēnī, ventům (ad to, venio come), come to, arrive, come. Adventure.
- adventus, us, m. (advenio come to), arrival, approach. Advent. adversus and adversum, prep.
- w. acc. towards, against.
 ad-verto, vertěrě, vertī, versŭm (ad towards, verto turn),
 turn towards; id animum ad-
- vertěre, to turn the mind towards it, to perceive it. AD-VERT.
- aedĭfĭciŭm, ī, n. (aedifico build), building, EDIFICE.
- aedĭfĭco, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm (acdes building for habitation, facio make), build. Edify, edification.
- Aeduī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Central Gaul.
- aeger aegră, aegrum, sick.
- Aenēas, ae, m., a Trojan prince, son of Venus and Anchīses.
- aequitās, ātis, f. (aequus fair, equitable), EQUITY, justice, moderation.

- aequus, ă, um, even, level; EQUAL; like; fair, equitable.
- aestās, ātĭs, f., summer.
- aetās, ātĭs, f., age.
- af-fĕro, af-ferrĕ, at-tŭlī, al-lātŭm (ad to, fero bring), bring to, carry to; offer; carry.
- af-ficio, ficere, feci, fectum (ad to, facio do), AFFECT, influence; magno dolore affici, to be very grievously affected.
- ăgĕr, agrī, m., field, land; country, territory.
- agger, aggeris, m., mound; materials for a mound.
- ag-grědior, grědí, gressús súm (ad to, gradior go), go to, approach; go against, attack. AG-GRESSION, AGGRESSIVE.
- agměn, agmĭnĭs, n. (ago put in motion), army on the march, line of march; [acies, army in battle array; exercitus, a disciplined army]; agmen novissimum, the rear; primum agmen, the van.
- ag-nosco, noscěrě, noví, nítům (ad denoting reference, (g)nosco know), recognize; know.
- ăgo, ăgĕrĕ, ēgī, actŭm, put in motion; laud, drive, conduct; act, do, perform. ACTION, AGENT.
- agrīcultūră, ae, f. (ager field, colo cultivate), AGRICULTURE.
- ălăcĕr, ălacrĭs, ălacrĕ, lively, cheerful; eager, fierce.
- ălacritās, ātis, f. (alacer lively), liveliness, eagerness, zeal. ALAC-RITY.

- Albă or Albă Longă, the mother city of Rome, built by Ascanius.
- Albanus, ī, m., an Alban, an inhabitant of Alba.
- alıquando, adv. (aliquis some one), at some time, once, formerly.
- ăliquis, indef. pron. [see 116, a], some one, somebody, something, some; any one, anybody, anything, any.
- ăliŭs, ăliă, ăliŭd [see 24], other, another.
- Allobroges, um, m. pl., a people in the southeastern part of Gaul.
- al-lŏquor, lŏqui, lŏcūtus sum (ad to, loquor speak), speak to, address.
- ălo, ălĕrĕ, ăluī, ălĭtŭm or altum, nourish, feed, support.
- Alpēs, Alpiŭm, f. pl. the ALPS.
- altē, altiŭs, altissimē (altus high, low), on high, highly; low, lowly.
- altěr, altěră, altěrům [see 24], one of two, the other, the second; alter - alter, the one - the other.
- altĭtūdo, altĭtūdĭnĭs, f. (altus high, deep), height; depth; ALTI-
- altus, ă, um (alo nourish), high, lofty: deep.
- ămīcītiă, ao, f. (amīcus friendly), friendship.
- ămīcus, ă, um (amo love), loving, friendly; amīcus, ī, m. friend. AMICABLE.

ā-mitto, mittěrě, mīsī, missŭm (ab away, mitto let go), lose.

amplio, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (amplus of large extent), enlarge.

ampliŭs, adv. more, farther.

Amuliŭs, ī, m., son of Silvius Procas and brother of Numitor. ăn, adv. or.

Anchīsēs, ae, m., a Trojan, the father of Aenēas.

Ancus Marcius, ī, m., the fourth king of Rome.

angustiae, ārŭm, f. pl. (angustus narrow), narrow pass, defile; difficulty.

ănim-ad-verto, vertere, verti, versum (animus mind, adverto turn towards), notice. Anim-ADVERT, ANIMADVERSION.

ănimăl, ănimālis, n., Animal.

animus, i, m., mind, soul; disposition; affection; feeling, courage.
[animus denotes the human soul, including all its faculties, including mens; mens denotes the thinking, MENTAL faculty.]

an-necto, nectěrě, nexuī, nexŭm (ad to, necto tie, fasten), tie to, fasten to. Annex.

annus, ī, m., year. Annual.
ante, prep. w. acc., before; adv.
before, previously. Ante in
Antecedent, etc.

anteā, adv. (ante before, ea that), before, previously.

antiquus, ă, um (ante before), ancient, old; of long continuance. Antique, antiquated.

ānŭlŭs, ī, m., ring. Annular.

Ap., abbreviation of *Appius*, a Roman prænomen.

ăpertŭs, ă, ŭm (aperio uncover), uncovered, unprotected.

ap-pello, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm (ad to, pello bring one's self to a person), address; name, call. Appeall, Appellation.

ap-prŏpinquo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ad to, propinquo draw near), draw near to, approach.

ăpud, prep. w. acc, at, near, in presence of, among.

ăquă, ae, f., water. AQUEDUCT. ăquilă, ae, f., eagle.

Aqu'ilēia, ae, f., a town at the head of the Adriatic Sea.

Aquītānī, ōrŭm, m. pl., inhabitants of Aquitania.

Aquītāniă, ae, f., the southwestern division of Gaul.

Arăr, Arărĭs, acc. Arărĭm, m., the Saône [pronounced Sōne], a river in Gaul, tributary to the Rhone.

arcessītum, invite, summon.

arceo, arcērĕ, arcuī, drive away; ward off, keep from; restrain.

Ardea, ae, f., a city of Latium, capital of the Rutuli.

armă, ōrŭm, n. pl., ARMS, weapons.

armillă, ae, f., bracelet or ring, worn on the left arm by soldiers as a reward for valor.

Ariovistus, ī, m., a powerful German king in the time of Caesar. ar-rĭpio, rĭpĕrĕ, rĭpuī, reptüm (ad upon, rapio seize), seize upon.

arrogantiă, ae, f. (arrogans assuming), haughtiness, insolence, Arrogance.

Arvernī, ōrŭm, m. pl., a people in the eastern part of Aquitania.

arx, arcis, f., citadel, fortress.

Ascaniŭs, ī, m., son of Aeneas.

Asia, ae, f., ASIA.

ăsinus, i in., an ass.

as-sĕquor, sĕquī, sĕcūtŭs sŭm (ad with no perceptible additional force, sequor follow), follow; overtake; obtain.

ăsylum, i, n. Asylum.

ăt, conj. but.

at-tingo, tingĕrĕ, tǐgī, tactǔm (ad against, tango touch), touch against, border upon; touch, reach.

atque, ac, conj. (ad in addition, que and), and also, and.

auctoritas, ātis, f. (auctor producer), AUTHORITY, influence.

audāciă, ae, f. (audax bold), boldness, AUDACITY.

audācītěr or audactěr, audāciŭs, audācissĭmē, adv. (audax bold), boldly, courageously.

audax, gen. audācis (audeo dare), bold, daring, AUDACIOUS.

audeo, audērē, ausūs sūm [see Ln. XCII., Note 31], dare, venture.

audio, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm, hear. Audit, Auditor, Audience.

au-fūgio, fūgĕrĕ, fūgī, fūgĭtŭm (ab away. fugio flee), flee away, escape; flee.

augeo, augērē, auxī, auctum, increase, Augment.

augurium, I, n. (auguror fr. augur diviner), Augury, divination.

aureŭs, ă, ŭm (aurum gold), golden.

aurīgă, ae, m. (aurea bridle, ago manage), charioteer.

aurĭs, aurĭs, f. ear. Auri-cular. aurŭm, i, n., gold.

aut, conj. or; aut — aut, either — or.

autěm, conj., but, yet, moreover.

auxĭlium, ī, n. (augeo increase), help, aid; pl. AUXILIARIES.

Aventīnus, ī, m., the Aventine.

aversus, ă, um (averto turn away), turned away; aversus hostis, a retreating enemy.

ā-verto, vertěrě, vertī, versům (ab away, verto turn), turn away, turn aside, AVERT. AVER-SION.

ăvŭs, ī, m., grandfather.

B.

barbărus, ă, um, foreign; uncivilized; savage, rude, barbarous. Barbarian.

beātŭs, ă, ŭm (beo bless), happy. BEATIFIC.

Belgae, ārŭm, m. pl., a powerful people dwelling in Northern Gaul. bellĭcōsŭs, ă, ŭm, warlike.

bello, ārĕ, āvī, atŭm (bellum war), carry on war.

bellum i, n., war.

běně, adv., well, finely.

běněficium, ī, n., kindness, BENE-FIT. BENEFICIAL.

běnignē, adv. (benignus kind), kindly; BENIGNLY. BENIGN, BENIGNANT.

bestiă, ae, f., BEAST.

Bibracte, is, n., the chief town of the Aedui.

biennium, ī, n. (bis twice, annus year), two years. BIENNIAL.

Bōiī, ōrŭm, m. pl., the Boii [pronounced Bō·yī], a nomadic people dwelling chiefly in Gaul, Italy, and Germany.

bŏnŭs, ă, ŭm, good, friendly; bŏnŭm, ī, n. a good thing, an advantage; bŏnă, ōrŭm, n. pl., goods, an estate.

bos, bovis, m. and f., ox, cow. brevis, breve, short, brief.

Brūtus, ī, m. (brutus stupiá), L. Junius Brutus, the deliverer of Rome from regal dominion.

C.

C., abbreviation of Gāiŭs [pronounced Gā-yus], a Roman praenomen.

caedes, caedis, f. (caedo kill), murder, slaughter, carnage.

caedo, caedere, cecidi, caesum, cut, cut down; kill, mur-

der. -CIDE in PARRI-CIDE, MATRI-CIDE, etc.

Caesăr, Caesăris, m., Caius Julius Caesar, a distinguished Roman general, orator, statesman, and author.

Cāiŭs Vălĕriŭs Procillus, a distinguished Gaul, friend of Caesar.

călămitās, ātis, f., CALAMITY, disaster, misfortune.

campus, i, m., plain, field; Campus, the Campus Martius, a grassy plain just outside the walls of Rome on which the people assembled for elections, military drills, and games.

cănis, cănis, m. and f., dog. căpio, căpere, cepi, captum, take, CAPTURE.

Căpitolium, i, n. (caput head), THE CAPITOL, the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline hill at Rome; the Capitoline hill, including both temple and citadel.

capră, ae, f., a she-goat. captīvŭs, ă, ŭm (capio capture), CAPTIVE; captīvŭs, ī, m., a

captive, a prisoner.

căpăt, căpitis, n, head. Oc-

carcer, carceris, m., prison. In-

cāreo, cārērĕ, cāruī, cārĭtŭm be without, lack.

carpentum, ī, n., chariot.

carrus, i, m., cart, wagon.

cārŭs, ă, ŭm, dear, beloved.

Cassiŭs, ī, m., a Roman name.

- castellum, i, n. (castrum a fortified place), CASTLE, fort, stronghold.
- Casticus, ī, m., a chief of the Sequani.
- castră, ōrŭm, n. pl., soldiers' huts, camp.
- causă, ae, f., cause, reason, motive; causā, for the sake of, when following a Genitive; causam dicere, to plead one's cause.
- căveo, căvērě, cāvī, cautum, be on one's quard. CAUTIOUS.
- cělěr, cělěris, cělěrě (cello impel), swift, speedy. Celerity.
- cělěritěr, cělěriůs, cělerrimē, adv. (celer swift), swiftly, quickly, immediately.
- cēlo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, CONCEAL, hide.
- census, us, m. (censeo assess, register), census.
- Centrones, um, m. pl., a tribe in Southeastern Gaul.
- centum, num. adj. indecl., hun-dred.
- certāměn, certāminis, n. (certo contend), contest; battle.
- certus, ă, um (cerno determine), CERTAIN, sure; Caesarem certiorem facere, to inform Caesar.
- cētěrī, ae, ă, adj. pl., the rest. cĭbŭs, ī, m., food.
- cingo, cingĕrĕ, cinxī, cinctŭm, surround, encircle. CINCTURE. circĭtĕr, adv. (circus circle), about, near.

- circum, prep. w. acc. (circus circle), around; near, in the environs of. CIRCUM- is a prefix in many English words; e. g. CIRCUM-FERENCE, CIRCUM-NAVIGATE.
- circum-do, dărĕ, dĕdī, dătŭm (circum around, do put), put around, surround.
- circum-věnio, věnīrě, vēnī, ventům (circum around, venio come), come around, surround; circumvent.
- cĭtĕrior, cĭtĕriŭs [see 85], hither. citrā, prep. w. aec., this side of.
- CIVIS, CIVIS, m. and f., citizen.
- cīvitās, ātis, f. (civis citizen), a body of citizens, a state; citizenship.
- clārus, a, um, clear; famous.
- claudo, clauděrě, clausí, clausŭm, close, enclose, shut; agmen clauděre, to bring up the rear. IN-CLUDE, EX-CLUDE.
- cliens, clientis, m. and f., (cluens fr. clueo hear), CLIENT, vassal.
- clipeus or clipeus, i, m., shield. cloācă, ae, f., drain, sewer; Cloāca maxima, the great sewer in Rome, constructed by Tarquinius Priscus.
- coepī, coepissě [see 127], have begun, began.
- cōgǐto, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm (cum denoting completeness, agito weigh in the mind), consider, reflect upon. Cogitate.

- cognōměn, cognōmǐnĭs, n. (cum denoting similarity, (g)nomen name), a surname.
- co-gnosco, gnoscěrě, gnōvī, gnǐtǔm (cum denoting completeness, (g)nosco know), know completely; find out, ascertain, learn, discover. COGNITION.
- cōgo, cōgĕrĕ, coēgī, coactum (cum together, ago drive), drive or lead together, collect; compel. Cogent.
- cohors, cohortĭs, f., сонокт, the tenth part of a legion.
- co-hortor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (cum intensive, hortor urge), exhort, encourage.
- Collātīnus, i, m., cognomen of L. Tarquinius.
- collĭs, collĭs, m., a hill.
- col·lŏco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (cum denoting completeness, loco place), lay, put, place; nuptum collocāre, to give in marriage. Collocate, collocation.
- collòquiùm, ī, n. (colloquor speak together), conference, interview. Colloquy.
- col-lŏquor, lŏquī, lŏcūtŭs sŭm (cum with, loquor speak), speak with, hold a conference.
- collum, ī, n., neck.
- cŏlo, cŏlĕrĕ, cŏluī, cultŭm, dwell; till, CULTIVATE; honor.
- com-būro, būrĕrĕ, bussī, bustŭm (cum denoting completeness, (b)uro burn), burn up. Combustion.

- comitium, i, n. (cum together, eo go), the comitium, a place where the Romans assembled to vote.
- commeātŭs, ūs, m. (commeo come and go), supplies, provisions.
- com-měmŏro, ārě, āvī, ātům (cum intensive, memoro remind of), call to mind; relate. Com-MEMORATION.
- com-meo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (cum denoting frequency, meo go), come and go, resort; ad Belgas commeāre, to visit the Belgae.
- com-mitto, mittěrě, mīsī, missăm (cum logether, mitto cause to go), join; begin; commit. Commission.
- commodē, adv. (commodus advantageous), advantageously, filly, conveniently; satis commode, conveniently enough, with sufficient ease.
- commodus, ă, um (cum denoting completeness, modus measure), advantageous, suitable, fit. Commodious.
- com-moror, ārī, ātus sum (cum denoting completeness, moror tarry), stop; reside, stay at; remain.
- com-moveo, movere, movi, motum (cum intensive, moveo more), move, affect, excite, disturb, stir up, induce. Commotion.
- com-mūnio, mūnīrĕ, mūnīvī and mūniī, mūnītŭm (cum

- denoting completeness, munio fortify), fortify on all sides.
- commūnis, commūně (cum together, munis serving), common.
- com-păro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (cum intensive, paro prepare), prepare with zeal, make ready.
- com-pěrio, pěrīrě, pěrī, pertům, learn, discover.
- com-plector, plectī, plexus sum (cum with, plector entwine one's self), embrace.
- complūrēs, complūră (rarely complūriă), gen. complūriŭm, adj. pl. (cum together, plures several), several together, very many.
- com-porto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (cum together, porto bring), bring together, collect. Comport.
- conātum, i, n. (conor to attempt), an attempt.
- con-cēdo, cēděrě, cessī, cessúm (cum denoting completeness, cedo yield), grant; concede. Concession.
- concilio, āre, āvi, ātum (concilium a calling together), bring together; win, CONCILIATE.
- concilium, i, n. (cum together, calo call), COUNCIL, assembly.
- concordiă, ae, f. (concors fr.
 cum denoting similarity, cor
 heart), CONCORD, harmony.
- con-curro, currere, cucurri and curri, cursum (cum together, curro run), rush together; hasten. Concurrent.

- conditio, conditionis, f. (condo put together), CONDITION.
- condo, conděrě, condidī, conditum (cum together, do put), found, build.
- con-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (cum together, duco lead), lead together, collect; hire; conduce.
- con-fèro, ferrě, tůlī, col-lātům (cum together, fero bring), bring together, collect; put off; confer; se conferre, to betake one's self. Conference, collate, collation.
- con-fício, fícĕrĕ, fēcī, fectúm (cum denoting completeness, facio make), execute, accomplish, finish. Confection.
- con-firmo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (cum denoting completeness, firmus firm), establish, strengthen, con-FIRM; encourage; assert. Con-FIRMATION.
- con-jřcio, jřcěrě, jēcī, jectům (cum intensive, jacio throw), hurl. Conjecture.
- conjūrātio, conjūrātiōnĭs, f. (conjūro swear together), conspiracy.
- con-jūro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (cum together, juro swear), swear together; conspire. Conjure.
- conjux, conjugĭs, m. and f. (conjungo fr. cum together, jungo join), spouse, husband, wife.
- conor, ārĭ, ātŭs sŭm, attempt, try.

- conscius, ă, um (cum with, scio know), conscious.
- con-sensus, us, m. (consentio think together), agreement, consent.
- con-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum (cum denoting completeness, sequor follow), follow after, follow; gain: obtain. Consequent.
- con-sĕro, sĕrĕrĕ, sĕruī, sertŭm (cum together, sero join), join together, join; pugnam conserĕre, to join battle, to fight.
- Considius, i, m., Publius Considius, an officer in Caesar's army.
- con-sido, siděrě, sēdī, sessům (cum together, sido sit down), sit down together, encamp.
- consilium, i, n., deliberation, counsel, plan, design.
- con-sisto, sistěrě, střtí, střtům (cum denoting complèteness, sisto place one's self), take a stand; keep a position; halt. CONSIST, CONSISTENT.
- con-sōlor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (cum intensive, solor comfort), comfort greatly, CONSOLE; encourage, cheer.
- conspectus, us, m. (conspicio look at), sight, view, presence.
- con-spicio, spicere, spexi, spectum (cum denoting completeness, specio look), behold, see.
- conspicor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (conspicio), behold, see.
- constantiă, ae, f. (constans standing firm), firmness, stead-fastness, CONSTANCY.
- con-stĭtuo, stĭtuĕrĕ, stĭtuī, stĭ-

- tūtŭm (cum denoting completeness, statuo cause to stand), resolve, determine: establish, station.
 Constitute, constituent.
- consuesco, consuescere, consuevi, consuetum, become accustomed, be wont.
- consul, consults, m. (akin to consulo consult), consult; one of the two chief magistrates at Rome, chosen annually.
- con-sūmo, sūměrě, sumpsī, sumptŭm (cum denoting completeness, sumo take), consume, waste, destroy. Consumption.
- con-temno, temněrě, tempsī, temptům, despise, contemn. Contempt.
- con-tendo, tenděrě, tendi, tentům (cum denoting completeness, tendo stretch), hasten, march in haste; contend, dispute, fight; w. inf. proceed, set out eagerly.
- contentio, contentionis, f. (contendo contend), contention, strife.
- con-tineo, tinere, tinui, tentum (cum together, teneo hold), hold together; encompass, hem in, bound; occupy, restrain. Con-TENT, CONTINENT.
- continenter, adv. (continens hanging together), continually, without cessation.
- con-tingo, tingĕrĕ, tIgī, tactum (cum denoting completeness, tango touch), touch on all sides; touch, border upon. Contact. contrā, prep. w. acc., against.

- contumēliā, ae, f. (cum intensive, tumeo swell), insult, abuse; disgrace. Contumely.
- con-vălesco, vălescere, văluī (cum denoting completeness, valesco grow strong), regain health, recover. Convalescent.
- con-věnio, věnīrě, vēnī, ventăm (cum together, venio come), come together, assemble; convene. Convention.
- conventus, us, m. (convenio come together), court; conventum agere, to hold a court.
- con-verto, vertere, verti, versum (cum denoting completeness, verto turn), turn about, change; in fugam convertere, to put to flight. Convert, conversion.
- con-vòcò, āre, āvī, ātǔm (cum together, voco call), call together, summon, convoke. Convoca-
- cōpiă, ae, f. (cum denoting completeness, ops means of any kind), plenty, abundance, supply; number; pl., forces, trapps; riches.
- cōpiōsŭs, ă, ŭm (copia plenty, osus full of), wealthy, well-supplied; copious.
- coram, prep. w. abl., in the presence of; before: adv., openly.
- Cŏrinthŭs, ī, f., Corinth, a city in Greece.
- corpus, corporis, n., body;
- cornū, ūs, n., horn; wing, flank of an army.

- cor-rōdo, rōděrě, rōsī, rōsĭm (cum denoting completeness, rodo gnaw), gnaw to pieces, gnaw; corrode.
- Crassus, M. Licinius Crassus, a celebrated Roman.
- crěmo, ārě, āvī, ātŭm, burn. CREMATION.
- creo, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm, create, elect, choose, appoint. Creation.
- crūs, crūris, n., leg.
- cultus, us, m. (colo cultivate), CULTURE, civilization.
- cum, prep.w.abl., with, together with.
 cupiditas, atis, f. (cupidus desirous), desire, wish, longing;
 eagerness, enthusiasm; CUPID-
- cŭpĭdŭs, ă, ŭm, (cupio desire), desirous, fond.
- cŭpio, cŭpĕrĕ, cŭpīvī and cŭpiī, cupītŭm, desire.
- cūr, interrog. adv., why? wherefore?
- cūră, ae, f. (quaero seek), care.
- Cŭrēs, Cŭriŭm, f. pl., chief town of the Sabines.
- cūriă, ae, f., curia or ward; senatehouse.
- Curiātiī, ōrum, m. pl., the name of an Alban tribe. Three brothers belonging to this tribe fought with the Horatii.
- cūro, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm (cura care), care for, attend to, cause something to be done. Curate.
- custos, custodis, m. and f., guard, watch. Custodian.

D.

- damno, ārĕ, āvī, atum (damnum penalty), CONDEMN.
- de, prep. w. abl., down from, from; of: about, concerning; for.
- deă, ae, f. [see 11], goddess.
- dēbeo, ērē, uī, ĭtum (de from, habeo have), owe.
- dē-cēdo, cēdĕrĕ, cessī, cessūm (de away, cedo go), go away, depart, retire.
- dē-certo, ārē, āvī, ātŭm (de intensive, certo contend), fight, contend.
- dĕcĭmŭs, ă, ŭm (decem ten), tenth.
- dē-cipio, cipĕrĕ, cēpī, ceptüm (de intensive, capio ensnare), DECEIVE. DECEPTION.
- declāro, ārē, āvī, ātŭm, show, DECLARE.
- dē-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductǔm (de down, away, duco lead), lead down or away, withdraw, lead. Deduce, deduct, etc.
- dē-fătīgo, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm (de denoting completeness, fatigo weary), weary completely, fatigue.
- dē-fendo, fendĕrĕ, fendī, fensum, DEFEND.
- dēformītās, ātīs, f., deformity, ugliness.
- deinde, adv., then, after that.
- dē-jicio, jicĕrĕ, jēcī, jectŭm (de down, jacio throw), throw or cast down. Dejection.
- dēlectus, ă, um (deligo choose), chosen.

- dēleo, dēlērĕ, dēlēvī, dēlētŭm destroy. Deleterious.
- dē-līběro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (de denoting completeness, libro weigh in one's mind), weigh well in mind, DELIBERATE. DELIB-ERATION.
- dē-līgo, lĭgĕrĕ, lēgī, lectŭm (de apart, lego gather), select, choose.
- Dēmārātŭs, ī, m., a Corinthian, father of Tarquinius Priscus.
- dē-mitto, mittěrě, mīsī, missŭm (de down, mitto let go), let go down; capite demisso, with bowed head.
- dē-monstro, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm (de intensive, monstro show), point out, show, demonstrate; declare. Demonstration.
- dēnī, ae, ă, num. adj. pl., ten each. dēnīquē, adv., at last, finally.
- dens, dentis, m., tooth. DENTAL.
 dē-pōno, pōněrě, pŏsuī, pŏsitům (de down, pono put), put
 down, lay aside, get rid of. DEPOSIT, DEPONENT.
- de-scendo, scendĕrĕ, scendī, scensŭm (de down, scando go), DESCEND.
- de-scrībo, scrīběrě, scripsī, scriptŭm, describe; divide.

 Description.
- dē-signo, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm (de intensive, signo mark), DESIGNATE, describe, meqn.
- de-spēro, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm (de denoting negation, spero hope) despair. DESPERATION.
- de-stĭtuo, stĭtuĕrĕ, stĭtuī, stĭtū-

- tum (de away, statuo put), forsake, abandon. Destitute, Destitution.
- dē-sŭm, de-essĕ, dē-fuī (de away, sum be), be wanting.
- dētěriŏr, dētěriŭs [see 85], worse.
- dētrīmentŭm, ī, n. (detero fr. de away, tero rub), loss; damage, injury; detriment. Detrimental.
- deŭs, i, m. [see 20], god; DEITY. dē-veho, vehěrě, vexi, vectům (de away, veho carry), carry away, bring.
- dē-vŏro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (de down, voro swallow), DEVOUR, eat up.
- dextř, dextră, dextrům, right; dextrā (sc. manu hand), on the right. Dexterous.
- dico, dicĕrĕ, dixī, dictŭm, say, tell, speak; appoint; call, name; causam dicĕre, to plead one's cause. Dictum.

diēs, diēī, m., day.

- dif-fero, dif-ferre, dis-tuli, dilātum (dis in different directions, fero carry), carry different ways; put off; differen.
- difficilis, e (dis negative, facilis easy), DIFFICULT; impracticable.
- dignītās, ātĭs, f. (dignus worthy), DIGNITY, rank; honor, office.
- dignus, ă, um, worthy. Dignify. di-mitto, mittere, mīsī, missum (dis hither and thither, mitto send), dismiss.

- di-ruo, ruĕrĕ, ruī, rūtŭm (dis asunder,ruo hurl down), destroy; overthrow; raze.
- dīs, m. and f.; dītĕ, n.; gen. dītĭs [dītiŏr, dītissĭmŭs], rich.
- dis-cēdo, cēděrě, cessī, cessīm (dis away, cedo go), go away, depart, leave.
- dissidium, i, n. (dissideo fr. dis apart, sedeo sit), dissension.
- dis-trībuo, trībuĕrĕ, trībuī, trībūtŭm (dis among several, tribuo give), distribute, divide.
- dĭtio, dĭtiōnĭs, f., dominion, power. diū, diūtiŭs, diūtissĭmē, adv., a long time.
- dĭvĕs, gen. dĭvĭtĭs, adj., rich.
- Divĭco, ōnĭs, m., a distinguished man among the Helvetii.
- dī-vǐdo, vǐděrě, vīsī, vīsīm (dis asunder, root vid separate), DIVIDE; separate. DIVISION.
- Divitiăcus, ī, m., a chief of the Aedui.
- dīvītiae, ārŭm, f. pl. (dives rich), riches, wealth.
- do, dărĕ, dĕdī, dătŭm, give.
- doceo, docere, docui, doctum teach, instruct; inform. Doc-
- dŏlŏr, dŏlōrĭs, m. (doleo feel pain), grief, sorrow, trouble. Dolorous.
- dŏlŭs, ī, m., fraud, deceit, stratagem.
- domo, ārē, domuī, domitum, subdue, conquer.
- domus, us and i [see 97], house, domi, at home; domum, home,

- homeward; domō, from home. Dome.
- dŭbĭtātio, ōnĭs, f. (dubĭto waver in opinion), doubt, hesitation.
- dŭbiŭs, ă, ŭm, doubtful. Dubi-
- dŭcentī, ae, ă, num. adj. pl. (duo two, centum hundred), two hundred.
- dūco, dūcere, duxī, ductum, lead, draw; suppose, consider; put off. Duct, Aqueduct.
- dulcis, dulce, sweet, pleasant.

 Dulcet.
- dum, conj., while, as long as; until.
- Dumnŏrix, Dumnŏrĭgĭs, m., one of the Aedui.
- duŏ, ae, ŏ, num. adj. [see 108],
- dux, dŭcĭs, m. and f., leader, guide; commander, general.

E.

- ēduco, ārē, āvī, ātum (educo bring up a child), EDUCATE. EDUCATION.
- ē-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (ex out, duco lead), lead out, lead forth. Educe, eduction.
- effemino, ārē, āvī, ātum (ex denoting change of nature, femina woman), enervate. Effeminate.
- ef-fício, fícĕrĕ, fēcī, fectúm (ex out, facio make), effect, accomplish.
- ef-fundo, funděrě, fūdī, fūsŭm

- (ex out, fundo pour), pour out, overflow. Effusion.
- Egĕriă, ae, f., a nymph, celebrated in Roman mythology as the wife and instructress of Numa.
- ĕgŏ, pers. pron. [see 112], I.
- ē-grědior, grědī, gressús súm (ex out, gradior go), go out, depart. Egress.
- ē-lābor, lābī, lapsus sum (ex out, labor slip), glide away, escape. Elapse.
- ē-mīneo, mīnērē, mīnuī (ex out, mineo jut), rise above; appear. Eminent.
- ěmo, ěměrě, ēmī, emptům, buy. ěnim, conj., for.
- ē-nuncio, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm (ex out of a place, nuncio carry a report), divulge, report.
- eŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ĭtŭm [see 126], go. eō, adv., to that place, thither, there; eō — quō, the — the.
- ĕquĕs, ĕquĭtĭs, m. (equus horse, eo go), rider, horseman; cavalryman; pl., cavalry.
- ěquestěr, tris, trě (eques horseman), of horsemen, of cavalry. Equestrian.
- ĕquĭtātŭs, ūs, m. (equĭto to be a horseman), cavalry.
- ĕquŭs, ī, m., horse.
- ē-rīpio, rīpērē, rīpuī, reptūm (ex out, rapio tear), tear out or from, take from.
- ět, conj., and, even; ět ět, both and.
- ětiăm, conj. (et-jam), and also, also, even.

- et-sī, conj., even if, although.
- Etrūriă, ae,f., a country of Italy, modern Tuscany.
- ē-verto, vertěrě, vertī, versům (ex out, verto turn), turn out; overturn, destroy.
- ē-vŏlo, āre, āvī, ātŭm (ex out, volo fly), fly out, fly away.
- ex, e, prep. w. abl. [see Ln. IV., Vx., 1], out of, from among; from; of.
- exemplum, i, n. (eximo fr. ex out, emo take), Example.
- ex-eo, īrĕ, iī, ĭtǔm (ex out, eo go), go out, go forth, depart; pass., be gone.
- exercitatio, onis, f. (exercito to exercise), practice.
- exercitus, us, m. (exerceo exercise), army. See agmen
- ex-ĭgo, ĭgĕrĕ, ēgī, actŭm (ex out, ago drive), drive out, lead out, spend; aestas exacta est, the summer is gone. Exaction.
- existimo, ārē, āvī, ātum, think, suppose; believe, imagine.
- exitium, i, n. (exeo go out), destruction, ruin.
- ex-ōro, ārĕ, āvī, ātĭm (ex effectually, oro entreat), move by entreaty; obtain by entreaty.
- expědītus, ă, um (expedio fr. ex away from, pes foot), unincumbered, passable. Expeditious.
- ex-plico, ārē, āvī, ātŭm (ex out, plico fold), unfold, explain, spread. Explication.

- explorator, oris, m. (exploro explore), spy, scout.
- ex-pugno, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm (ex effectually, pugno fight), take by assault; storm, capture.
- ex-specto, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm (ex very much, specto look for), EXPECT, long for; wait. EXPECTATION.
- extrā, prep. w. acc., without, beyond.
- ex-trăho, trăhere, traxī, tractum (ex out, traho draw), draw out, extract. Extraction.
- extrēmus, a, um [see 85], furthermost, most distant, EXTREME.
- ex-ūro, ūrere, ussī, ustum (ex entirely, uro burn), burn up.

F.

- fābŭlă, ae, f. (fari to speak). story, FABLE.
- făcile, făcilius, făcilime, adv. (facilis easy), easily, readily, without difficulty.
- făcilis, făcile (facio do, ilis denoting capability), easy, practicable. Facile.
- făcio, făcĕrĕ, fēcī, factŭm, do, make; incite, furnish; iter facĕre, to march, to journey.
- factio, factionis, f. (facio take part with one), FACTION, political party.
- factum, ī, n. (facio do), deed, act. făcultās, ātis, f. (facilis which see), ability, opportunity. Faculty.

fămîliă, ae, f. (famulus servant), household, FAMILY.

fămīliārītās, ātīs, f. (familiāris intimate), intimacy, friendship, FAMILIARITY.

fămulă, ae, f., maid, maid-servant.

fauce, abl., f. sing., throat; fauces, faucium, f. pl., throat.

Faustŭlŭs, ī, m., the shepherd by whom Romulus and Remus were brought up.

făveo, făvērě, fāvī, fautum, favor, show favor.

fēlēs and fēlĭs, fēlĭs, f., cat. Feline.

fēlīcĭtĕr, adv. (felix happy), happily, successfully.

fēlix, gen. fēlicīs, adj. (feo produce), happy, fortunate. FE-LICITOUS.

femină, ae, f., female, woman. Feminine.

fĕrē, adv., almost, nearly.

fĕro, ferrĕ, tŭlī, lātŭm, bear, bring, carry; endure.

fěrŭs, ă, ŭm, wild, uncultivated; fěră, ae, f., wild beast.

ferrum, i, n., iron; sword.

festum, i, n., feast.

fides, fidei, f. (fido trust), faith, confidence; pledge, promise; protection. Fidelity.

filiă, ae, f. [see 11], daughter. filiăs, î, m., son.

fīnio, fīnīrĕ, fīnīvī, fīnītŭm (fīnis end), end, FINISH.

fīnīs, fīnīs, m., end, limit, boundary; pl., territory. FINAL.

fīnītīmus, ă, um (finis boundary), neighboring; fīnītīmī, ōrum, m. pl., neighbors.

fio, fiĕrī, factús sŭm [see 126], be made; become; occur, huppen.

firmĭtĕr, adv. (firmus firm), firmly, securely.

flāgito, ārē, āvī, ātum, demand.

flammă, ae, f., FLAME. fleo, flērě, flēvī, flētǔm, weep.

flens, gen. flentis, weeping.

flös, flöris, m., flower. FLORAL flüměn, flümĭnis, n. (fluo flow), river.

fluo, fluĕrĕ, fluxī, fluxŭm, flow. Fluent, fluency.

fődio, főděrě, fődi, fossům, dig. Fossil.

foedus, foederis, n., league, treaty. Federal.

formīdo, formīdĭnĭs, f., fear, terror.

formōsĭtās, ātĭs, f., beauty.

fortassě, adv. (fors chance), perhaps.

fortě, adv. (fors chance), accidentally, by chance.

fortĭs, fortĕ, brave, bold, courageous, valiant; strong.

fortiter, fortius, fortissime, adv. (fortis brave), bravely, valiantly. fortune, ae, f., fortune.

fŏrŭm, ī, n., market-place; Fo-RUM; court of justice.

fossă, ae, f. (fodio dig), ditch, trench.

frāter, frātris, m., brother. Fraternal.

frīgŭs, frīgŏrĭs, n., cold, frost.

frūmentāriūs, ă, ŭm (frumentum corn), of corn; res frumentaria, supplies.

frumentum, i, n., corn, grain.

fruor, fruī, fructŭs sŭm, enjoy [see 104].

fŭgă, ae, f., flight.

fŭgio, fŭgĕrĕ, fūgī, fŭgĭtŭm, flee; escape. Fugitive.

fulměn, fulmĭnĭs, n. (fulgeo flash), thunder-bolt, lightning. Fulminate.

fūnus, fūneris, n., funeral procession, burial; funeral.

G.

Găbiniŭs, i, m., Aulus Gabinius, a Roman consul.

Galliă, ae, f., Gaul; it embraced modern France, Belgium, that part of the Netherlands south of the Rhine, the provinces of Germany west of the Rhine, and a large part of Switzerland; all this was known as Gallia ulterior, farther Gaul, and as Gallia transalpina, Gaul across the Alps, i. e. from Rome: the northern part of modern Italy was known as Gallia citerior, hither Gaul. and as Gallia cisalpīna, Gaul this side the Alps, i.e. towards Rome.

gallīnă, ae, f., hen. Gallŭs, ī, m., a Gaul. Garumnă, ae, f., a river of Gaul, the Garonne.

gěmĭnŭs, ă, ŭm, double; gemĭni filii, twin-sons.

gĕnĕr, gĕnĕrī, m., son-in-law.

Gěnāvă, ae, f., a town of the Allobroges, on Lake Lemannus, modern GENEVA.

gens, gentĭs, f. (gigno beget), nation, tribe. GENTILE.

gĕnŭs, gĕnĕrĭs, n., birth, kind race.

Germānī, ōrum, m. pl., the Germans.

gěro, gěrěrě, gessī, gestům, bear. carry; carry on, wage; pass. happen, take place.

gigno, gigněrě, gěnuī, gěnĭtům, beget; bear; pass., be born.

gloriă, ae, f., GLORY, renown.

glōrior, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (gloria glory), boast, glory.

grădus, us, m. (gradior to step), step, stair. GRADE.

Graecus, ă, um, Grecian, Greek.

grātiă, ae, f. (gratus beloved, dear), favor; influence, popularity; GRACE: pl., thanks.

grātulor, ārī, ātus sum, con-GRATULATE.

grăvăs, grăvě, heavy, burdensome; grievous, painful, severe. Grief.

grāvītēr, grāviūs, grāvissīmē, adv. (gravis heavy), heavily; grievously, severely.

grūs, gruĭs, m. and f., crane (a bird).

H.

hăbeo, ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm, HAVE, hold; regard, consider; deliver.

Harūdēs, ŭm, m. pl., a people of Southern Germany.

hastă, ae, f., spear, lance.

haud, adv., not at all, by no means.

haedus and hoedus, ī, m., kid, a young goat.

Helvētiī, ōrŭm, m. pl., an ancient people occupying a large part of the country now called Switzerland.

Helvētius, a, um, of the Helvetii. herbidus, a, um (herba grass), grassy.

hībernă, ōrŭm, n. pl. (hiems winter), winter-quarters; [properly an adjective with castra understood.] HIBERNATE.

hǐc, haec, hŏc, this; pl., these [see 113].

hīc, adv. (hic this), here, in this place.

hiĕmo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (hiems winter), pass the winter.

hinc, adv. (hic this), hence, from this place.

Hispāniă, ae, f., Spain.

hŏdiē, adv. (contracted fr. hoc and die, on this day), to-day.

hŏmŏ, hŏmĭnĭs, m. and f., human being, person, man. [See Ln. XXV., Note 1.]

honor, honoris, m., Honor.

hōră, ae, f., HOUR.

Horātiī, ōrum, m. pl., three Ro-

man brothers who fought against the Curiatii.

hortor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm, exhort, urge. Hortatory.

hospitium, I, n. (hospes guest), Hospitality. Hospital, Hospitalle.

hostĭs, hostĭs, m. and f., enemy, public enemy; [inimīcus is a personal enemy.] Hostile.

hūc, adv. (hic this), hither, to this place.

hūmānĭtās, ātĭs, f. (humanus of or belonging to man), HUMANI-TY, refinement, culture.

I.

ĭbĭ, adv. (is), there, in that place; then.

řeo, řeěrě, řeř, ietům, strike; foedus řeěre, to ratify or make a treaty. Ictus.

idem, eădem, idem (is and dem. suffix dem), the same [see 113]. idoneus, ă, um, fit, suitable.

igitur, conj., therefore.

ignis, is, m., fire.

illě, illå, illůd, that, he; pl., those. imměritůs, ă, ŭm (in negative, meritus deserving), not deserving; not deserved.

immortālis, immortāle (in negative, mortālis mortal), IMMOR-TAL.

immortālītās, ātīs, f. (immortālis *immortal*), IMMORTALITY.

impědīmentům, ī, n. (impedio fr. in in the way of, pedes feet),

- hindrance pl., baggage of an | inchoo, āre, āvī, ātum, begin, army, including beasts of burden and their drivers; [sarcinae are packs carried by the soldiers.] IMPEDIMENT.
- im-pendeo, pendēre, no perf. nor sup. (in over, pendeo hang), overhang; IMPEND.
- impěrātor, oris, m. (impero command), commander-in-chief, general.
- imperītus, ă, um (in negative, perītus skilled), unskilled, inexperienced.
- impěriům, ī, n. (impero command), command; government; EMPIRE, supreme power.
- impero, āre, āvī, ātum (in upon, paro put), give orders, order; command; rule.
- impětŭs, ūs, m., attack, assault. IMPETUS.
- im-plōro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, beseech, entreat, IMPLORE.
- im-pōno, pōnĕrĕ, pŏsuī, pŏsĭtum (in upon, pono place), place upon; levy upon. IMPOSE, IMPOSITION.
- im-porto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (in into, porto bring), bring into, IMPORT.
- in, prep. w. acc and abl.; w. acc., into, to, towards, against; w. abl., in, on, upon, among.
- inānis, ināně, empty; vain, ineffectual.
- incendo, incendere, incendi, incensum, set on fire, burn. INCENDIARY.

- in-cido, ciděrě, cidī (in into, cado full), fall into or upon; chance to meet with. INCIDENT, INCIDENTAL.
- in-cito, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (in without additional force, cito put in quick motion), instigate, encourage; INCITE.
- in-cŏlo, cŏlĕrĕ, cŏluī, cultŭm (in in, colo dwell), inhabit, durell.
- incolumis, ĕ, unhurt, safe.
- incommodum, ī, (incommodus fr. in negative, commodus convenient), inconvenience, misfortune, defeat.
- incrēdibilis, ĕ (in negative, credo believe, bilis denoting capability), INCREDIBLE; extraordinary.
- incursio, onis, f. (incurro fr. in into. against; curro run), attack: INCURSION.
- in-cūso, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (in against, causa cause), censure, blame.
- in-dīco, dīcĕrĕ, dixī, dictŭm (in among, dico speak), declare, proclaim.
- indignus, ă, um (in negative, dignus worthy), unworthy.
- indŏlēs, ĭs, f., disposition, nature. in-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (in into, duco lead), lead into; INDUCE.
- indulgeo, indulgēre, indulsī, indultum, favor, show favor; INDULGE.

- in-duo, duĕrĕ, duī, dūtŭm, put on, dress; clothe.
- inermis, ĕ (in negative, arma arms), unarmed; defenceless.
- infěrior, inferius, lower. Inferior [see 85].
- in-fero, in-ferre, in-tuli, illatum (in into, upon, fero bring), bring into or upon, make upon. Infer, inference.
- in-fluo, fluere, fluxī, fluxum (in into, fluo flow), flow into, empty. Influence, influx.
- in-frendeo, frendere, gnash with the teeth.
- ingens, gen. ingentĭs, vast, enormous, large.
- in-haereo, haerērē, haesī, haes sum (in to, in; haereo stick), stick or cleave to or in.
- in-hio, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (in for, hio gape), gape for, desire.
- Inimīcus, ă, um (in negative, amicus friendly), unfriendly, hostile; INIMICAL. See hostis.
- initium, ī, n. (ineo fr. in upon, eo enter), beginning. INITIAL.
- in-jĭcio, jĭcĕrĕ, jēcī, jectŭm (in into, jacio throw), throw into; inspire, infuse. INJECT.
- injūriž, ae, f. (injurius fr. in negative, jus right), injury, wrong; injustice, damage, insult.
- in-nascor, nascī, natŭs sŭm (in in, nascor be born), spring up in.
- inopia, ae, f. (inopes fr. in negative, opes resources), want, scarcity.

- inquam and inquio, defective verb, say.
- insĭdiae, ārŭm, f. pl., treachery, deceit. Insidious.
- insignĭs, insignĕ (in upon, signum mark), remarkable, extraordinary; insignĕ, ĭs, n., sign.
- in-stĭtuo, stĭtuĕrĕ, stĭtuī, stĭtūtŭm, appoint, institute; train up, instruct.
- institūtum, ī, n., custom; institution.
- in-struo, struĕrĕ, struxī, structum (in without additional force, struo arrange), arrange, form, draw up. Instruct, instruction.
- intel-ligo (lego), ligere, lexi, lectum (inter between, lego choose), understand, know. Intelligent.
- inter, prep. w. acc., between, among.
- inter-cēdo, cēděrě, cessī, cessům (inter between, cedo go), intervene. Intercede, intercession.
- īnter-cipio, cipere, cepī, ceptum (inter between, capio take), usurp; take away fraudulently; intercept.
- inter-fĭcio, fĭcĕrĕ, fēcī, fectŭm (inter between, facio make), kill, slay.
- inter-ĭmo, ĭmĕrĕ, ēmī, emptŭm, kill, put to death.
- interněcio, ōnis, f. (interněco fr. inter completely, neco kill), slaughter.

interregnum, ī, n. (inter between, regnum reign), interregnum.

inter-sum, esse, fuī (inter between, sum be), be between, intervene.

intervallum, I, n. (inter between, vallum rampart), INTERVAL, distance.

intro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, enter.

in-tueor, tuērī, tuītŭs sŭm (in upon, at; tueor look), look at or upon.

intus, adv., within.

invidiă, ae, f. (invideo look askance at), ENVY, hatred.

invītus, a, um, unwilling; sē invīto, against his will.

ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsăm [see 113], self; himself, herself, itself; very; ipse-rex, the very king.

irrētio, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm (in in, rete net), entangle, ensnare.

ir-rīdeo, rīdērě, rīsī, rīsŭm (in at, rideo laugh), laugh at, deride.

irrīto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, provoke, incite, irritate. Irritation.

is, ex, id, he, her, it; this; that [see 113].

Isocrătēs, is, m., a celebrated Greek orator and rhetorician.

ĭtă, adv. (is), so, thus, in this manner, as follows.

Ităliă, ae, f., ITALY.

Itălus, ă, um, Italian.

ită-quě, conj., and so, accordingly, therefore.

ĭtěm, adv. (is), in like manner, likewise.

ĭtěr, ĭtĭněrĭs, n. (eo go), journey;

march; way, road, route; iter facere, to march. ITINERANT. iterum, adv. (is), again, a second time.

J.

jăceo, ērē, uī, jăcitum, lie. jăcio, jăcere, jēcī, jactum, throw, hurl, cast.

jăm, adv., now, already.

Jānicŭlŭm, ī, n., a hill across the Tiber from Rome.

jŭbeo, jŭbērě, jussī, jussŭm, command, order.

jūdĭciŭm, ī, n., (judex judge), judgment; trial; sentence; decision. Judicial.

jūdico, ārē, āvī, ātim (jus law, dico point out), JUDGE; determine, conclude; think. AD-JUDICATE.

jugum, ī, n. (jungo join), yoke; ridge, summit: in war a frame made of two upright spears supporting a third in a horizontal position, under which a conquered army was made to pass in token of subjection.

jūmentum, ī, n., beast of burden as a horse or an ox.

Juppiter and Jūpiter, Jŏvis, m., son of Saturn, father of gods and king of men.

Jūră, ae, m., the Jura, a chain of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone and forming the western boundary of Switzerland. jūs, jūris, n., right, law. Jurist. jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, n., oath [see 110].

jussū, m. abl. (jubeo command), by command.

justus, ā, um (jus law, suffix tus denoting fulness), JUST, right. juvo, juvāre, juvī, jutum, help, aid, assist. Ad-JUTANT.

L.

L., abbreviation of *Lucius*, a Roman praenomen.

Lăbiēnus, ī. m., one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war. läbör, läböris, m., labor, toil.

lacrimă, ae, f., tear.

lăcus, ūs, m., LAKE.

laetor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (laetus joyful), rejoice, exult.

laetŭs, ă, ŭm, joyful.

lănio, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, tear in pieces.

lăpis, lăpidis, m., stone. LAPID-

lăqueŭs, ī, m., noose, snare.

Lārentiă, ae, f. See Acca.

largītio, ōnĭs, f. (largior give bountifully), liberality.

lātē, adv. (latus broad), widely, extensively.

Lătīnŭs, ī, m., an ancient king of the Laurentes, a people of Italy.

latro, latronis, m., robber.

latro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, bark, bark at.

lătus, lăteris, n., side; flank. Lateral. lātŭs, ă, ŭm, broad, wide; large, spacious. LAT-ITUDE.

Lāvīniă, ae, f., daughter of Latinus and second wife of Aenēas.

Lāvīniŭm, ī, n., a city in Italy built by Aenēas.

lēgātio, ōnis, f. (lego send on an embassy), embassy. Legation.

lēgātŭs, ī, m. (lego send as a representative), ambassador, envoy, LEGATE; lieutenant.

lěgio, lěgiōnis, f. (lego levy), LEGION, a body of infantry varying in number from 4000 to 6000, and generally accompanied by about 300 cavalrymen.

lĕgo, lĕgĕrĕ, lēgī, lectŭm, choose.

Lemannus, ī, m., Lake Leman or Geneva in Switzerland.

lēnitas, ātis, f., smoothness.

leo, leonis, m., Lion.

lētālis, ĕ (letum death; suffix alis, belonging to), fatal, deadly.
lēvitās, ātis, f. (lēvis smooth), smoothness.

levitās, ātis, f. (levis light), lightness. Levity.

lex, lēgis, f., law. LEGAL.

līběr, līběră, līběrům, free.

lībērālītās, ātīs, f. (liberālis fr. liber free), LIBERALITY, generosity.

līběrē, līběriŭs, adv. (liber free), freely, unreservedly.

līběrī, ōrŭm, m. pl., children.

lībero, āre, āvī, ātum (liber free), to free, LIBERATE.

liceor, licērī, licītus sum, bid at an auction.

Hœĕt, lĭcērĕ, lĭcuĭt or lĭcĭtŭm est, it is permitted, allowed; one may [see 128 and LN. LXIX., Examples 2-5].

lĭcĕt, although.

Lingŏnēs, ŭm, m. pl, a people in Northeastern Gaul.

linguă, ae, f., tongue; LANGUAGE. LINGUIST, LINGUAL.

Lisous, ī, m., a magistrate among the Aedui.

litteră and līteră, ae, f. (lino besmear), letter of the alphabet; pl., letter, epistle. LITERATURE.

lŏcŭs, ī, m. [pl. loci and loca], place. Local, locality.

longē, longiŭs, longissĭmē, adv. (longus long), far, by far; often used to strengthen superlatives.

longissımē, adv., very far.

longitūdo, inis, f. (longus long), length. Longitude.

longŭs, ă, ŭm, long.

lŏquor, lŏquī, lŏcūtŭs sŭm, speak, talk. Loquacious.

Lūcius, i, m., a Roman praenomen.

Lūcrētiă, ae, f., a Roman matron, wife of Collatīnus.

lūdus, i, m., play, game.

lŭpă, ae, f., she-wolf.

lupus, ī, m., wolf.

lustro, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm, review. lux, lūcĭs, f. (luceo shine), light.

lýră, ae, f., lyre.

M.

M., abbreviation of Marcus, a Roman praenomen.

M'., abbreviation of Mānius, a Roman praenomen.

măgīs, maxīmē, adv., more, rather. măgistrātŭs, ūs, m. (magister fr. mag-, root of magnus, signifying to be great), magistrate.

magnitūdo, inis, f. (magnus great), size, MAGNITUDE.

magnus, ă, um, great, large, big, mighty. MAGNI-.

mājestās ātĭs, f., MAJESTY, dignity.

mājör, mājūs, gen. mājōrīs (comp. of magnus), larger, greater, bigger; mājōrēs, ŭm, m. pl., ancestors. Major.

mălě, pējŭs, pessĭmē, adv., badly, ill, wickedly.

mălě-dīco, dīcěrě, dīxī, dictům (male ill, dico speak), speak ill of, revile, rail at; [with dat.] MALEDICTION.

mălěfīciŭm, ī, n. [malefīcus doing evil), mischief, damage.

mălěficůs, ă, ŭm (male wickedly, facio do), wicked; mălěficůs, ī, m., an evil-doer.

mālo, mallě, māluī (magis more, volo be willing), be more willing, choose rather, prefer [see 125].

mălŭs, ă, ŭm, bad, wicked, evil, destructive.

măneo, mănērě, mansī, mansŭm, stay, RE-MAIN. mandātum, ī, n. (mando fr. manus hand, do pu'; put in one's hand), charge, order, command.

Mandate.

mănŭs, ūs, f., hand; force of soldiers. Manufacture.

Maniŭs, ī, m. See M'.

Marciŭs, i, m., a Roman name.

Marcus, ī, m. See M.

mărĕ, mărĭs, n., sea.

mărītăs, ī, m. (marīta wife), belonging to a wife, husband.

Mars, Martis, m., son of Jupiter and Juno, and god of war. MARTIAL.

massă, ae, f., MASS, lump.

mātěr, mātrĭs, f., MOTHER; matron.

mātrimōnium, ī, n. (mater mother), marriage; in matrimonium dare, to give in marriage; in matrimonium ducĕre, to marry. Matrimony.

Matrona, ae, m., a river in Gaul, the modern Marne.

mātūrē, adv. (matūrus ripe), early, soon.

mātūro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, hasten, make haste.

mātūrŭs, ă, ŭm, ripe, MATURE. mědiocrītěr, adv. (mediocris fr. medius denoting a middle state), moderately; non mediocrīter, exceedingly.

mědiůš, ž, ŭm, in the middle or midst; in the middle of; middle, central.

měl, mellĭs, n., honey. MELLI-FLUENT. mělior, mělius, gen. mělioris (comp. of bonus), better.

měmini, měminissě, remember [see 127].

měmŏr, gen. měmŏrĭs, mindful of, mindful.

měmoria, ae, f. (memor mindful of), memory, recollection, remembrance.

mens, mentis, f., mind. See animus. Mental.

mensis, mensis, m., month.

mercātŏr, ōrĭs, m. (mercor to trade), trader, merchant.

mercēs, mercēdis, f., wages, hire, reward, price.

měreo, ērě, uī, ĭtům, deserve, acquire.

měritům, ī, n., desert. Merit. Messālă, ae, m., a Roman name. mētior, mētīrī, mensůs sům, MEASURE, deal out.

Mettius, ī, m., Mettius Fufetius, an Alban general, put to death by Tullus Hostilius.

meŭs, ă, ŭm, my, mine.

mīlĕs, mīlĭtĭs, m., soldier.

mīlītārīs, ĕ (miles soldier, arīs belonging to), MILITARY; res militāris, military science.

millě, pl. mīlia, mīliŭm, thousand [see 108].

milviŭs, ī, m, kite (a bird).

mĭnĭmē [parvē, mĭnŭs, mĭnimē], adv., least, by no means.

mĭnĭmŭs, ă, ŭm, least [see 85]. mĭnŏr, mĭnŭs, smaller, less [see 85]; minor natu, younger. mĭnuo, mĭnuĕrĕ, mĭnuī, mĭnūtŭm, di-minish. Diminution.

mĭnŭs, adv. less. See minime.

mīror, ārī, ātús súm, AD-MIRE; wonder at.

mīrŭs, ă, ŭm (miror wonder at), wonderful.

mĭsĕr, mĭsĕră, mĭsĕrüm, wretched, pitiable, lamentable, MISER-ABLE.

mitto, mittěrě, mīsī, missům, send.

moeniă, moeniŭm, n. pl., walls of a city.

mollio, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm (mollis soft), soften, subdue.

moneo, ēre, uī, itum, remind; advise, AD-MONISH.

mons, montis, m., MOUNTAIN,

monstro, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm (monstrum a divine omen), show, point out. DE-MONSTRATE.

morbus, ī, m., disease. Morbid. morior, morī and morīrī, mortuus sum, die.

mŏror, ārī, ātŭs sŭm, tarry, delay, hinder.

mors, mortis, f., death. Mortal. mos, moris, m., custom, manner; usage; pl., character. Moral.

moveo, movēre, movī, motum, Move; excite: castra movēre, to break up camp.

mŭliĕr, mŭliĕrĭs, f., woman.

multitūdo, ĭnĭs, f (multus much), MULTITUDE.

multus, ă, um, much, many a; pl. many. Multi-ply.

mūnio, īrĕ, ivi, ītǔm (moenia wall, rampart), fortify.

mūnītio, ōnĭs, f. (munio fortify), fortification. Munition.

mūnŭs, mūněrĭs, n., gift, reward. Re-muner-ate.

mūs, mūrĭs, m., mouse.

muscălăs, m. (mus), a little mouse.

N.

năm, conj., for.

nascor, nascī, nātŭs sum, be born. Nascent.

nātū, abl. sing. m., by birth; minor natu, younger.

nātūră, ae, f. (nascor be born),

nātŭs, ă, ŭm (nascor be born), old.

nāvis, nāvis, f., ship. NAV-AL, NAVI-GATE.

nē, adv., not; conj., that not; that. ně, interrog. particle; is appended to first word of the question and asks for information.

něc. See něquě.

něco, ārě, āvī, ātům, kill, put to death.

něgo, ārě, āvī, ātům, deny, refuse. NEGATION.

něgōtiŭm, ī, n. (nec not, otium leisure), business; quid negō ti? what business? NEGOTI-ATE.

nēmo, nēmĭnĭs, m. and f. (ne not, homo a man), no one, no body.

něp**ōs**, něp**ōtīs**, m., grandson. Nepotism.

Neptūnus, ī, m., Neptune, god of the sea.

nēquāquăm, adv., by no means. něquě, něc, conj., and not;

neque, nec, conj., and not;

neque — neque, neither —

nor.

nervus, ī, m., nerve, vigor, energy.

nescio, īrĕ, īvī and iī, ītŭm (ne not, scio know), not know.

neuter, neutra, neutram (ne not, uter one or the other), neither [see 24]. Neuter.

nĭhĭl, n. indecl., nothing.

nihilo minus, adv., none the less, nevertheless.

nĭhĭlŭm, ī, n., nothing.

nĭsĭ, conj. (ne not, si if), if not, unless, except.

nītor, nītī, nīsŭs or nixus sŭm, strive, endeavor.

nōbilis, nōbile (nosco know, bilis denoting capability), well known, Noble, of high rank.

nobilitās, ātis, f. (nobilis noble),

nōlo, nollě, nōluī (non not, volo willing), be unwilling.

nōměn, nōmǐnǐs, n., NAME. nōn, adv., not.

nonně, interrog. particle, expects the answer yes.

non-nullüs, ä, üm, some one; nonnulli, örüm, m. pl., several nersons.

Norētă, ae, f., a town in Noricum. Noricus, ă, um, of Noricum, a country lying between the Upper Danube and Eastern Alps.

nōs, pers. pron., we [see 112].
nostěr, nostră, nostrům, our,

noto, āre, āvī, ātum (nota, a mark), mark. Note, nota-

Noviodūnum, ī, n., the name of several cities in Gaul.

novus, a, um, new, strange; recent, fresh; novae res, revolution; agmen novissimum, the rear. Novel.

nox, noctis, f., night.

nūbēs, nūbĭs, f., cloud.

nūbo, nūběrě, nupsī, nuptŭm, veil herself for the bridegroom, marry [of a bride]. Nuptial. nūdůs, ă, ŭm, naked, bare; Nude. nullůs, ă, ŭm (ne not, ullus any one), no, none, not any one.

num, whether; in direct questions to be omitted in translation.

Numa, ae, m., Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.

nŭměrŭs, ī, m., NUMBER.

Nŭmĭtŏr, ōrĭs, m., father of Rhea Silvia.

nunc, adv., now.

nuncio, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (nuncius messenger), AN-NOUNCE, report.

nuncupo,ārě,āvī,ātum. to name. nunquăm and numquăm, adv. (ne not, unquam ever), never.

nūpěr, adv. (novus new), newly, recently.

nutrio, īrě, īvī, ītům, nourish.
NUTRITION, NUTRIMENT.

nymphă, ae, f., a nymph; the nymphs were demi-goddesses inhabiting the sea, rivers, fountains, woods, trees, and mountains.

O.

- ŏb, prep. w. acc., on account of, for.
- ŏbēdio, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm (ob without any additional force, audio listen to), listen to, obey; be subject to. OBEDIENT.
- ŏb-eo, īrĕ, īvī and iī, ĭtŭm (ob towards, eo go), die.
- ŏb-erro, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm (ob about, erro wander), wander about, wander.
- ob-jicio, jicere, jecī, jectum (ob before, at; jacio throw), throw before, at, or against; throw up. Object, objection.
- oblīviscor, oblīviscī, oblītŭs sŭm, forget.
- ob-ruo, ruĕrĕ, ruī, rŭtŭm (ob without additional force, ruo cast down with violence), overwhelm; cover.
- ob-secro, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm (ob on account of, sacra sacrifices), be-seech, implore.
- obsěs, obsídis, m. (obsideo stay), hostage.
- ob-testor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (ob with no additional force, testor bear witness), conjure, beseech.

- ob-tineo, tinērē, tinuī, tentim (ob with no additional force, teneo hold), hold, OBTAIN, possess.
- obviăm, adv., in the way; obviam īrě or fiěri, to meet.
- occāsŭs, ūs, m. (occīdo fall), going down; solis occāsu, ar sunset.
- oc-cīdo, cīděrě, cīdī, cīsům (ob against, caedo cut, strike), kill, slay.
- oc-culto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, hide, cônceal. Occult.
- oc-cupo, ārĕ, āvī, ātum (ob with no additional force, capio take), seize, take possession of, occupy. Occupation.
- oc-curro, currere, cucurri and curri, cursum (ob towards, curro run), meet. Occur, occurrence.
- Oceanus, I, m., ocean.
- Ocĕlŭm, ī, n., a town in the western part of Cisalpine Gaul.
- octāvus, ă, um, eighth. Octave. octō-dĕcim, num. adj., eighteen.
- octō-gintā, num. adj, eighty.
- ŏcŭlŭs, ī, m., eye. Oculist.
- ōdī, ōdissĕ, hate [see 127].
- of-fendo, fenděrě, fendī, fensům, offend, wound. Offence.
- of-fĕro, of-fĕrrĕ, ob-tŭlī, oblātŭm (ob towards, fero bring), OFFER, present.
- officium, I, n. (opes aid, facio render), service, duty; obedience, allegiance. Office.

omnīnō, adv. (omnis all), altoqether, at all.

omnis, omnë, all, every, the whole. Omni-science, omni-potent, omni-present.

ŏnŭs, ŏnĕrĭs, n., load, burden; weight; size. Onerous.

ŏpĭs, ŏpĕm, ŏpĕ [nom., dat., and voc. sing. not used; pl. entire]; pl., ŏpēs, ŏpūm, ŏpĭbūs, etc.; f., power; means, resources.

ŏportět, ŏportērě, ŏportuĭt, it behooves, it is necessary, one ought [see 128 and Ln. LXIX., Examples 6-8].

oppĭdŭm, ī, n., town, walled town.

op-pugno, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm (ob against, pugno fight), attack, besiege, assault.

optio, ōnĭs, f. (opto choose), choice, option.

ŏpĭs, ŏpĕrĭs, n., work, labor.

ōrātio, ōrātiōnĭs, f. (oro speak), speech, harangue; Oration.

ōrātōr, ōrātōrĭs, m. (oro plead), ORATOR.

ordino, ārē, āvī, ātum (ordo arranging), arrange, order.

Orgētŏrix, ĭgĭs, m., the noblest and richest among the Helvetii.

ŏriens, gen. ŏrientĭs (part. fr. orior), rising. Orient.

ŏrior, ŏrīrī, ortŭs sŭm, rise, arise, begin.

ornāmentŭm, ī, n. (orno adorn), ORNAMENT, distinction.

ōro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (os mouth), beseech, beg; implore, pray. ōs, ōrĭs, n., mouth; face. Oral. ŏs, ossĭs, n., bone. Ossi-fy.

os-tendo, tenděrě, tendī, tentům (ob before, tendo spread), show, point out, exhibit. Ostensible.

Ostiă, ae, f., a town at the mouth of the Tiber, built by Aneus Marcius.

ostiŭm, ī, n., mouth of a river. ōvŭm, ī, n., egg. OVAL.

P.

P., abbreviation of *Publius*, a Roman praenomen.

pābŭlātio, ōnĭs, f., foraging. pābŭlŭm, ī, n. (pasco feed), food.

pāco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (pax peace),
PACIFY; subdue.

paeně, adv., almost, nearly.

pāgŭs, ī, m., district, canton.

pār, gen. păris, equal, like. Par. pārātus, ă, um (part. of paro prepare), pre-pared, ready.

parco, parcĕrĕ, pĕpercī and parsī, parcĭtŭm and parsŭm (parcus spare), to spare.

părio, părĕrĕ, pĕpĕrī, părĭtŭm and partŭm, bear, bring forth; ovum parĕre, to lay an egg.

pars, partis, f., PART, share; side; direction,

parvŭs, ă, ŭm [comp., minor, superl., minĭmus], small, little, insignificant.

pascor, pascī, pastŭs sŭm, feed, graze.

- passus, us, m. (pando stretch out the feet), step, PACE; as a measure of length, about five feet.
- pastor, pastoris, m. (pasco feed), shepherd. Pastor.
- pătě-făcio, făcěrě, fēcī, factům (pateo be open, facio make), make open, open.
- pătěr, pătris, m., father.
- păternus, ă, um (pater father), PATERNAL.
- pătior, pătī, passus sum, let, allow; suffer. Passion, passive.
- pătria, ae, f. (pater father), native land, fatherland. PA-TRIAL.
- paucī, ae, ă, adj. pl., few.
- paulus, ă, um, little; paulo, n. abl. sing., by a little, little.
- pāvo, ōnĭs, m. and f., peacock. pax, pācĭs, f., peace. Pacify.
- pellis, pellis, f., skin.
- pello, pellěrě, pěpůli, pulsům, drive out or away, banish; rout. Re-pulse.
- pennă, ae, f., feather. PEN.
- per, prep. w. acc., through; by means of, by.
- per-cătio, cătěrě, cussī, cussăm (per through, quatio strike), strike through, strike. Percussion.
- per-do, děrě, dřdī, dřtům (per through, do put), lose. Perdi-
- per-dūco, dūcěrě, duxī, ductŭm (per through, duco lead),

- lead through or to, conduct; fossam perducere, to extend or make a trench.
- per-făcilis, ĕ (per very, facilis easy), very easy.
- per-fício, fícërĕ, fēcī, fectum (per completely, facio make), accomplish. Perfection.
- perfidiă, ae, f. (perfidus one who breaks his promise), PERFIDY.
- pěrīcŭlōsŭs, ă, ŭm (pericŭlum danger; suffix ōsus full of), dangerous.
- pěrīculum, ī, n., danger, risk, PERIL.
- pěrītůs, ă, ům, skilful, experienced.
- per-mitto, mittěrě, mīsī, missŭm (per through, mitto let go), permit, allow. Permission.
- per-moveo, movere, movi, motim (per completely, moveo more), prevail upon.
- pernĭciēs, pernĭciēī, f. (pernĕco fr. per completely, neco kill), ruin, destruction. Pernicious.
- perpaucī, ae, ă (per very, pauci few), very few.
- per-sĕquor, sĕquī, sĕcūtŭs sŭm (per perseveringly, sequor follow), pursue. Persecute.
- per-severo, āre, āvi, ātum (perseverus very strict), persevere, continue.
- per-suādeo, suādērē, suāsī, suāsŭm (per thoroughly, suadeo advise), Persuade, prevail upon. Persuasion.

per-terreo, ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm (per thoroughly, terreo frighten), thoroughly frighten, terrify.

per-tineo, tinērē, tinuī, tentum (per thoroughly, teneo hold, lay hold of), extend; reach, tend; PERTAIN, belong.

per-turbo, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm (per thoroughly, turbo disturb), greatly disturb, DISTURB. PERTURB, PERTURBATION.

per-věnio, věnīrě, vēnī, ventům (per quite through, venio come), come through, come to; arrive; reach.

pēs, pědís, m., foot. Pedal. pěto, pětěrě, pětīvī and pětiī, pětītům, ask, request; beseech, beg for; seek; attack. Petition.

pětůlantiă, ae, f. (petůlans saucy), sauciness; insolence; PETULANCE.

pīleŭs, ī, m., hat; cap. pīlŭm, ī, n., javelin.

Pīso, ōnĭs, m., a Roman consul.

pistrīnum, ī, n. (pistor miller), mill.

plăceo, plăcērĕ, plăcuī, plăcătum, please; plăcĕt, impers., it pleases, it seems good.

plăgă, ae, f., hunting-net, toil.

plebs, plēbis, f., commons, common people.

plūrimus, a, um [superl. of multus], most.

plūs, plūris [compar. of multus, see 85], more.

poenă, ae, f., punishment. PENAL.

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitŭs sŭm (insep. prefix pot largely, liceor offer), promise.

pōno, pōněrě, pŏsuī, pŏsĭtŭm, place, put; castra pŏněrě, to pitch a camp. Position.

pons, pontis, m, bridge.

pŏpŭlātio, ōnĭs, f., ravaging. pŏpŭlor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (popu-

pŏpŭlor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (populus people), ravage, lay waste. DE-POPULATE.

populus, ī, m., People; pl., nations, tribes.

portă, ae, f., gate. PORTAL.

por-tendo, tenděrě, tendī, tentům, fortell, predict, presage; betoken; PORTEND.

porto, ārě, āvī, ātům, carry, bear, TRANS-PORT. Ex-PORT.

portōriŭm, ī, n. (porto carry), duty paid on goods imported or exported.

posco, poscěrě, poposci, no sup., demand.

possessio, ōnĭs, f. (possideo possess), Possession.

pos-sĭdeo, sĭdērĕ, sēdī, sessŭm (potis powerful, sedeo sit), be master of; possess.

pos-sŭm, pos-sĕ, pot-uī (potis able, sum be), be able, can [see 68].

post, prep. w. acc., ofter.

posteā, adv. (post after, ea that), after that, afterwards.

post-eā-quām, after that, after. posterus, a, um [comp., pos-

terior; superl., postrēmus and postumus], following, ensuing,

- succeeding; postero die, on the following day; postěrī, ōrŭm, m. pl., descendants.
- post-quăm, conj., after, as soon as.
- postrīdiē, adv. (postero following, die on the day), on the following day.
- postŭlo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, ask for, demand.
- potens, gen. potentis (possum be able), able, powerful, influential. POTENT.
- pŏtesţās, ātīs, f. (potens able), ability, power; opportunity; ălīcuī pŏtestātěm făcěrě, to give any one an opportunity.
- pŏtior, pŏtīrī, pŏtītŭs sŭm (potis able), acquire, obtain, get possession of.

pŏtiŭs, adv., rather, sooner.

- prae-cēdo, cēděrě, cessī, cessum (prae before, cedo go), surpass, excel; precede. Precedent.
- praecĭpĭto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (praeceps headlong), throw violently, throw. Precipitate.
- praecipuē, adv. (praecipuus fr. praecipio fr. prae before, capio take), especially, chiefly.
- prae-dĭco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (prae publicly, dico tell), proclaim, declare; boast. Predicate.
- prae-fĕro, ferrĕ, tŭlī, lātŭm (prae before, fero bear), prefer.
- prae-fício, fícĕrĕ, fēcī, fectŭm (prae over, facio place), place over, put in command of.

- prae-mitto, mittere, misi, missum (prae forward, mitto send), send forward.
- praemium, ī, n. (prae beyond others, emo take), profit, reward. Premium.
- prae-pōno, pōnĕrĕ, pŏsuī, pŏsitum (prae before, first; pono put), put before or first; prefer. Preposition.
- praesēpě, ĭs, n. (praesepio, to fence in front), manger.
- praesidium, i, n. (praesideo fr. prae before, sedeo sit), defence, protection; guard, garrison.
- prae-sto, stārĕ, stǐtī, stǐtūm and stātūm (prae before, sto stand), stand before, excel; se praestāre, to show one's self.
- prae-sum, esse, fui (prae over, sum be), be over, rule over, be in command of.
- praetĕr, prep. w. acc. (prae before and suffix ter), past, by; besides, except.
- praeter-eo, īrĕ, iī, ĭtŭm (praeter by, eo go), go by. Pre-TERIT.
- praeter-quăm, adv., except.
- praetŏr, praetōrĭs, m., praetor, a Roman magistrate, next in rank to a consul and elected annually.
- prātum, ī, n., meadow.
- prěcī, prěcěm, prěcě [nom. and gen. sing. not used], pl., prěcēs, prěcům, etc., request, prayer.
- prěmo, prěměrě, pressī, pres

- sum, PRESS, press upon. Op-
- prětiům, ī, n., worth, value, price.
 AP-PRECIATE.
- prīdiē, adv., on the day before.
- prīmo, adv. (primus), at first.
- prīmum, adv. (primus), at first; quam prīmum, as soon as possible.
- prīmus, a, um [see 85], first; prīmum (agmen), the van of an army. Prime, primal, primary.
- princeps, gen. principis, adj. (primus first, capio take), first, chief; princeps, ipis, m., chief, leader. Prince, principal.
- principātus, us, m. (princeps chief), first place; pre-eminence; principātum tenēre, to be at the head.
- prior, prius [superl. primus, see
 85], the former; first.
- Priscus, ī, m., a surname of the elder Tarquin.
- pristinus, a, um, former; PRISTINE.
- priusquăm, adv., before.
- prīvātim, adv. (privus single), as a private citizen.
- prīvātus, a, um (part. of privo deprive), PRIVATE.
- prō, prep. w. abl., before, for, instead of.
- probo, ārē, āvī, ātum (probus good), show; PROVE. PROBATION.
- Procas, ae, m. See Silvius. pro-cedo, cedere, cessi, cessum

- (pro forward, cedo go), go forth, PROCEED, advance. PROCES-
- prŏcŭl, adv. (procello drive forward), afar off, far.
- prō-cūro, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm (pro for, curo care), care for, take care of, manage. PROCURE.
- prodigium, i, n. (pro beforehand, root dic point out), PRODIGY.
- proeliŭm, ī, n., battle.
- profectio, onis, f. (proficiscor set out), departure.
- pro-ficiscor, ficisci, fectus sum (pro forwards, facio put one's self), set out, depart; go, march, travel.
- prŏ-fŭgio, fŭgĕrĕ, fūgī, fŭgĭtǔm (pro before, fugio flee), flee before, flee.
- pro-hibeo, hibere, hibui, hibitum (pro in front, habeo hold), restrain, prevent, keep from; prohibit. Prohibition.
- prō-jicio, jicĕrĕ, jēcī, jectim (proforward, jacio throw), throw forward, cast away; se prōjicĕrĕ, to throw one's self forward or down. Project.
- prō-mŏveo, mŏvērĕ, mōvī, mōtŭm (pro forward, moveo move), move forward, advance. Promotion.
- prope, propius, proxime, adv., near, almost.
- propero, are, avi, atum (properus speedy), hasten.
- prŏpinquŭs, ī, m. (prope not far, hinc hence), relative; prŏpin-

quă, ae, f., kinswoman. Pro-

propior, propius [superl. proximus, see 85], nearer.

prō-pōno, pōnĕrĕ, pŏsuī, pŏsitum (pro before, pono place), expose to view; propose. Proposal, proposition.

propter, prep. w. acc., on account of.

propter-ea, adv., for this reason. proterea quod, because.

prō-spicio, spicere, spexī, spectum (pro forwards, specio look), look forwards; look out for. Prospect, prospective.

prō-sŭm, prōd-essĕ, prō-fuī (pro(d) for, sum be), be for, be useful; benefit, profit.

provinciă, ae, f., province.

proximē, adv. [positive propě, compar. propiùs], very near, very recently, last.

proximus, a, um [see 85], next, nearest; ensuing, last. 'Prox-IMITY, APPROXIMATE.

publice, adv. (publicus fr. populus people), in the name of the state.

Publiŭs, ī, m., a Roman name.

pŭdŏr, pŭdōrĭs, m. (pudeo feel shame), shame, feeling of shame. puellă, ae, f., girl.

puěr, puěri, m., boy. Puer-ile. puěritia, ae, f. (puer boy), boyhood, childhood.

pugnă, ae, f., battle. Pugna-

pugno, ārě, āvī, ātům, fight.
pulchěr, pulchrå, pulchrům
(polio polish), beautiful.

pūnio, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm (poena punishment), PUNISH.

pūpillus, ī, m. (pupulus a little boy), pupil, ward.

pŭto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, think, believe.

Pyrēnaeus, ă, um, Pyrenean; Pyrēnaeimontes, the Pyrenees.

Q.

quā, adv. (qui) where.

quădrāgēsimus, ă, um (quadraginta forty), fortieth.

quădrāgintā, num. adj. indeel. (quattuor four), forty.

quaero, quaerĕrĕ, quaesīvī and quaesiī, quaesītŭm, see, ask, in-quire. In-quest, in-quisition.

quālis, quāle, of what sort; as. quam, conj. and adv., than; as.

quăm-ob-rem, adv., on account of which thing; for which reason; wherefore.

quam-quăm, conj., although.

quamvis, conj. (quam as, vis you will), as you will; however much; although.

quantus, ă, um, how much; how great; as; quantum boni, how much good.

quārē, adv. (abl. of quae and res), for which thing, for which.

quartus, ă, um (quattuor four), fourth. Quart.

- quattuŏr, num. adj. indecl., four. quĕ, conj., and [see Ln. XXIII., Vx., 1].
- queror, querī, questus sum, complain. Querulous.
- quī, quae, quŏd, rel. pron., who, which, what; that [see 114].
- quī, quae, quŏd [interrog. pronoun used adjectively, see 116], which? what? what sort of a? what kind of a?
- quid, why? [see Ln. XCII., NOTE 1].
- quīdăm, quaedăm, quoddăm or quiddăm; gen. cujusdăm; [indef. pron. declined like qui], a certain.
- quidem, adv., indeed; ne quidem, not even.
- quin, conj. (qui by which, ne not), but that, that not.
- quindecim, num. adj. indecl. (quinque five, decem ten), fifteen.
- quingentī, ae, ă (quinque five, centum hundred), five hundred.
- quini, ae, ă (quinque five), five each.
- quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron., who? what? [see 116].
- quis, indef. pronoun, anybody, anything [see 116].
- quisquăm, quaequăm, quidquăm or quicquăm; gen. cujusquăm; [indef.pron.declined like quis], any one, anything, any.
- quō, adv., that, in order that. quŏd, conj., because, that.

- quōmŏdŏ, adv. (qui what, modus manner), in what manner, by what means, how.
- quoque, conj, also.
- quŏtīdiē, adv. (quot every, dies day), every day, daily.
- quum and cum, rel. adv., when, as; conj., since; although; quum tum, both and.

R.

- rādix, rādīcis, f., root; radix or radīces montis, the foot of a mountain. RADISH.
- răpīnă, ae, f. (rapio seize), plundering; RAPINE.
- răpio, răpěrě, răpuī, raptům, seize, plunder. Rapture.
- raptor, ōris, m. (rapio seize), one who seizes; robber.
- Raurăcī, ōrŭm, m., a people in Northeastern Gaul, neighbors of the Helvetii.
- rěcens, gen. rěcentis, RECENT, fresh, new.
- rě-cipio, cipěrě, cēpī, ceptům (re back, capio take), take back; RECEIVE; se recipěre, to betake one's self, withdraw. Re-CEPTION.
- red-do, děrě, dřdī, dřtům (re(d) back again, do give), return.
 RENDER, RENDITION.
- rěd-eo, īrě, iī, ĭtům (re(d) back, eo go), go back, return.
- rěd-ĭmo, ĭměrě, ēmī, emptům (re(d) back, emo buy), buy back, release, ransom; purchase; hire,

- farm. REDEEM, REDEMP-
- rědĭtio, ōnĭs, f. (redeo go back), going back, return.
- rě-dūco, dūcěrě, duxī, ductům (re back, duco lead), lead back, lead. REDUCE, REDUCTION.
- rĕ-fĕro, ferrĕ, tŭlī, lātŭm (re back, fero bear), bear or bring back, restore. Refer, re-
- re-fluo, fluĕrĕ, no perf. nor sup. (re back, fluo flow), flow back. REFLUENT, REFLUX.
- rěgio, ōnĭs, f., REGION.
- rēgiŭs, ă, ŭm (rex king), royal. regno, ārě, āvī, ātǔm (regnum rule), reign, rule.
- regnum; i, (rego to rule), royal power, sovereignty; government; kingdom.
- rē-jicio, jicĕrĕ, jēcī, jectŭm (re back, jacio throw), throw back, hurl back. Reject, rejection.
- rěligio, ōnis, f., RELIGION, sanctitu.
- rě-linquo, linquěrě, līquī, lictăm (re behind, linquo leave), leave behind, leave; quit, abandon. Relinquish.
- rěliquus, ă, um (relinquo let remain), remaining, rest of.
- rĕ-măneo, mănērĕ, mansī, mansŭm (re behind, maneo stay), stay behind, REMAIN.
- rěminiscor, rěminisci, recall to mind, recollect. Reminiscence. rě-moveo, movērě, movi, mo-

- tum (re back, moveo move), REMOVE. REMOTE.
- Rěmůs, ī, m., twin brother of Romulus.
- rě-nuncio, ārě, āvī, ātům (re back, nuncio bring word), report. Renounce.
- repente, adv. (repens sudden), suddenly.
- rĕ-pĕrio, pĕrīrĕ, pĕrī, pertŭm (re again, pario produce), find, discover.
- rě-pōno, pōněrě, pòsuī, pòsitům (re again, pono place), place again, restore. Repose.
- rēs, rěī, f., thing, affair.
- re-scindo, scinděrě, scidī, scissŭm (re away, scindo cut), cut away, destroy. Rescind.
- re-spondeo, spondērě, spondī, sponsŭm (re in return, spondeo promise), reply, answer. RESPOND.
- responsum, ī, n. (respondeo reply), answer. Response.
- respublică, respublicae, f. (res affair, publica belonging to the people), REPUBLIC, commonwealth [see 110].
- re-stituo, stituere, stitui, stituium (re again, statuo set up), restore. Restitution.
- rě-tineo, tinērě, tinui, tentům (re back, teneo hold), hold back, restrain, prevent. Retention.
- reverentia, ae, f. (revereor stand in awe of), REVERENCE.
- rě-verto, vertěrě, vertī, versŭm and

rĕ-vertor, vertī, versŭs sŭm (re back, verto turn), turn back, return. REVERT, REVERSION.

rě-vŏco, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm (re back, voco call), call back. Revoke.

rex, rēgis, m., king. REGAL.

Rhea, ae, f., Rhea Silvia, the mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnus, ī, m., the Rhine.

Rhodanus, I, m., the Rhone.

rīpă, ae, f., bank (of a stream).

rixor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (rixa quarrel), to quarrel.

rŏgo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, ask, demand, request.

Rōmă, ae, f., Rome.

Rōmānŭs, ă, ŭm, Roman; Rōmānŭs, ī, m., a Roman.

Rōmŭlŭs, ī, m., the founder and first king of Rome; Romŭlus Silvius, a king of Alba.

rūpes, rūpis, f. (rumpo break), rock, cliff.

S.

- Săbīnī, ōrŭm, m., the Sabines, an ancient Italian people adjoining the Latins.
- săcĕr, sacră, sacrum, SACRED; sacră, ōrum, n. pl., sacred rites, sacrifices.
- săcerdōs, ōtĭs, m. and f. (sacer sacred, do give), priest; priestess.
- saepě, saepišs, saepissime, adv., often.
- saepě-nůměro, adv., oftentimes,
 frequently.

- sălūto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (salus greeting), greet, SALUTE. SALUTATION.
- sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood. Sanguine, sanguinery.
- Santŏnēs, ŭm and Santŏnī, ōrŭm, m. pl., a people of Aquitania.
- săpientiă, ae, f. (sapiens wise), wisdom.
- sarcĭnă, ae, f. (sarcio to patch), bundle; pl., baggage carried by soldiers. See impedimenta.
- sătĭs, adv., enough, sufficiently; used adjectively in the sense of sufficient.
- sătis-făcio, făcĕrĕ, fēcī, factum (satis enough, facio do), do enough, satisfy, give satisfaction.
- Sāturniă, ae, f., a town built by Saturn on the Capitoline Hill.
- Sāturnus, ī, m. (sero sow), Saturn, the father of Jupiter; honored as the god of agriculture.
- scělůs, scělěris, n., crime, guilt, wickedness.
- scio, scīrě, scīvī and sciī, scītum, know, understand. Science.
- scrībo, scrīběrě, scripsī, scriptům, write. Scribe, de-scribe, script, scripture.
- scūtĭm, ī, n., a shield; [scutum was an oblong shield, made of wood, and covered with leather; clipeus, a round brazen shield.]

sěd, conj, but.

sēdēs, sēdĭs, f. (sedeo sit), seat;

dwelling-place; sedes regni, seat of government.

Sĕgŭsiānī, ōrŭm, m. pl., a people of Gaul, neighbors of the Allobroges and Aedui.

sěměl, adv., once.

sempěr, adv., always, continually. sěnātor, ōris, m. (senex old),

sĕnātŏr; ōrĭs, m. (senex old), senator.

sĕnātŭs, ūs, m. (senex old), SENATE.

sēnī, ae, ă (sex six), six each.

sententiă, ae, f. (sentio think), opinion. SENTENCE.

septěm, num. adj. indecl., seven.

septentriones (septemtriones), ŭm, m. pl., the north; sub septentrionibus, towards the north.

septimus, a, um (septem seven), seventh.

Sēquănă, ae, m., a river of Gaul, the modern Seine.

Sēquānī, ōrūm, m. pl., a people of Gaul, dwelling on the Sequana.

Sēquānus, ă, um, of the Sequani. sequor, sequi, secutus sum, follow; accompany. Sequence.

sermo, sermonis, m., discourse, conversation. Sermon.

servitus, ūtis, f. (servus slave), slavery, bondage.

Servius, i, m., Servius Tullius, the sixth king of Rome.

servus, i, m., slave, SERVANT.

sex, num. adj. indecl., six.

sī, conj., if; whether; see whether. sīc, adv., so, thus.

siccus, ă, um, dry; siccum, ī, n., dry land.

sīc-ŭt and sīc-ŭtī, adv., as; as if.

significo, ārē, āvī, ātum (signum sign, facio make), mean, signify. Significant.

signum, ī, n., sign, mark; sig-NAL.

silvă, ae, f., woods, forest. SIL-VAN.

Silviă, ae, f., Rhea Silvia, the mother of Romulus and Remus.

Silviŭs, ī, m., name of several kings of Alba; Silvius Procas, a king of Alba and father of Numitor and Amulius.

similis, simile, like, similar. sin, conj. (si if, ne not), but if.

sine, prep. w. abl., without.

singuli, ae, a, single, one by one; each.

sĭnistĕr, sĭnistră, sinistrăm, left. Sinister.

sŏcĕr, sŏcĕrī, m., father-in-law.

sŏciŭs, ī, m., ally. As-soci-ate.

sõl, sõlĭs, m., sun. Solar. sŏleo, sŏlērĕ, sŏlĭtŭs sŭm, be

wont, be accustomed.

sõlitūdo, inis, f. (solus alone), desert; solitary place; solitude.

sõlŭm, adv. (solus alone), only, alone.

sŏlŭm, ī, n., ground, soil.

solus, ă, um, alone, only [see 24].

sŏnĭtŭs, ūs, m (sono make a noise), sound, noise.

- sŏnŭs, ī, m. (sono make a noise), noise.
- sŏrŏr, sŏrōrĭs, f., sister.
- spătiŭm, ī, n., SPACE; opportunity.
- specto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (specio look), look at, behold, see; face, front, be situated.
- spēs, spěī, f. hope, expectation.
- spĭrĭtŭs, ūs, m. (spiro breathe), breath; pride; lofty airs.
- spontě, f. abl. [gen. spontřs; no other cases found], of free will; suā sponte, of his own free will.

 SPONTANEOUS.
- stătuo, stătuërë, stătuī, stătūtum (status standing), set up; put; establish; decide. Statute.
- stěrilis, ě, unfruitful, sterile.
- stīpendiŭm, ī, n. (stips contribution, pendo pay), tax, tribute. STIPEND.
- sto, stārē, stětī, stătům, stand; nobis sanguĭne stat, it costs us blood. State, station.
- stölidüs, ä, üm, foolish. Stolid. strēnuus, ä, üm, bold, brave. Strenuous.
- stŭdeo, stŭdērě, stŭduī, no sup., he eager or zealous, desire.
- stŭdium, ī, n. (studeo be eager), zeal, desire. Study.
- suādeo, suādērě, suāsī, suāsum, advise, PER-SUADE.
- sub, prep. w. abl., under, beneath; in the time of; sub monte, at the foot of a mountain.
- sub-dūco dūcĕrĕ, duxī, duc-

- tum (sub from under, duco draw), draw from under; withdraw; take away.
- sub-eo, īrĕ, īvī and iī, ĭtŭm (sub under, eo go), go under; endure.
- sŭbĭto, adv. (subĭtus sudden), suddenly, quickly.
- sub-levo, ārē, āvī, ātum (sub from beneath, levo lift up), raise up, support; help, aid.
- sub-rīdeo, rīdērě, rīsī, rīsŭm (sub a little, rideo laugh), smile.
- sub-sĭlio, sĭlīrĕ, sĭluī and sĭliī, no sup. (sub up, salio leap), leap up, jump.
- sub-věho, věhěrě, vexī, vectům (sub from below, veho carry), bring up, transport.
- suc-cēdo, cēděrě, cessī, cessum (sub behind, cedo come).
 succeed, follow. Succession.
 Suēvī, ōrŭm, m. pl., a powerful
- people of Germany.
 suĭ, of himself, herself, itself,
 themselves [see 112]. Sui-
- CIDE. See caedo.
 Sullă, ae, m., Lucius Cornelius
 Sulla, a celebrated Roman.
- sum, essě, fui, be [see 62].
- summă, ae, f. (summus highest), amount, sum total. Sum.
- summus, ă, um, highest [positive superus, comparative superior, superlative suprēmus and summus].
- sūmo, sūměrě, sumpsī, sumptum, take, As-sume. As-sume

super, prep. w. acc. and abl., over, above, upon. Super-.

superbio, īrĕ, no perf. nor sup. (superbus proud), be proud of.

sŭperbŭs, ă, ŭm, proud; Superbŭs, ī, m., the Proud, a surname of the younger Tarquin, the last king of Rome.

superior, superius, upper, higher; former. Superior. See superus.

superis, ă, um [comp. superior, superl. suprēmus or summus] (super over, above), above, on high, upper.

supero, ārē, āvī, ātum (super over), surmount, surpass, over-come, subdue.

super-sum, esse, fuī (super over, beyond; sum be), be over; survive.

supplicium, ī, n., punishment.

sus-cipio, cipere, cepi, ceptum (sub under, capio take), undertake, take upon; engage in; receive; sibi suscipere, to take upon one's self.

suspīcio, ōnĭs, f. (suspīcor suspect), suspīcion.

suspicor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (suspicio fr. sub secretly, specio look at), suspect.

sus-tineo, tinēre, tinuī, tentum (sub up, teneo hold), hold up, sustain; endure; withstand.

suus, ä, um (sui), his, his own; her, her own; its, its own; their, their own. T.

T., abbreviation of *Titus*, a Roman praenomen.

tăbălă, ae, f., board; writingtable; muster-roll. TABLE.

tălentŭm, ī, n., a TALENT, a sum of money equal to about \$1200.

tăm, adv., so, so very.

tăměn, adv., nevertheless; yet, still.

tamquăm and tanquăm, adv. (tam so, quam as), as much as; as if.

Tănăquīl, īlĭs, f., wife of Tarquinius Priscus.

tanděm, adv., at length; at last. tantůs, ă, ùm, so great, such, so large.

tardītās, ātīs, f. (tardus slow), slowness, tardiness; heaviness.

Tarpēiă, ae, f., Tarpeia [pronounced Tar-pē-ya], daughter of Spurius Tarpeius.

Tarpēius, ă, um, Tarpeian [pronounced Tar-pē-yan]; mons
Tarpēius, the Tarpeian Rock,
the name of a rock on the
Capitoline hill from which
criminals were thrown headlong; the Tarpeian Mount.

Tarquĭniī, ōrŭm, m. pl., an ancient town of Etruria.

Tarquiniüs, ī, m., Tarquin, the name of an illustrious Roman family, of which two, Priscus and Superbus, were kings. tectum, ī, n. (tego to cover), roof.

tēlum, ī, n., weapon, missile.

tempëro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (tempus a piece cut off), abstain. Temper, temperate.

tempestās, ātĭs, f. (tempus time), storm; TEMPEST.

templum, ī, n., TEMPLE.

tempŭs, tempŏrĭs, n., time. Temporal.

těneo, těnērě, těnuī, tentům, hold; have, possess; keep; restrain; měmŏriā těnērě, to remember.

těněr, těněră, těněrům, tender, delicate.

tento, ārĕ āvī, ātŭm, try. Ten-TATIVE.

terră, ae, f., earth, land, ground.

terreo, ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm, frighten,

territo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (terreo frighten), terrify.

territorium, I, n. (terra earth), TERRITORY.

tertio, adv. (tertius third), the third time.

testis, testis, m. and f., witness. TESTIFY.

Ti., abbreviation of *Tiberius*, a Roman praenomen.

Tīberīs, is [acc. im, abl. ī], m., the Tiber, a river in Italy on which Rome is situated.

Tiběriŭs, ī, m. See Ti.

tĭmeo, ērĕ, uī, no supine, to fear.

timidus, a, um, (timeo to fear), TIMID; cowardly.

timor, timoris, m., fear. Timorous.

tintinnābŭlŭm, ī, n. (tintinno to ring), bell.

Titus, ī, m. See T.

tollo, tollěrě, sustůlī, sublātům, lift, raise; pick up; remove, take away; destroy.

tŏnitrŭs, ūs, m., and tŏnitrŭ, n. indecl. (tono to thunder), thunder.

tŏno, tŏnārĕ, tŏnuī, tŏnĭtŭm, thunder.

tötus, ă, um, whole, entire.

trā-dūco and trans-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductǔm (trans across, duco lead), lead across· lead; lead from one place to another. Traduce.

trans, prep. w. acc., across, over; beyond. TRANS-.

trans-eo, īrē, iī, ītūm (trans across, over; eo go), go across or over; cross. Transit, transitive, transient, transition.

trans-féro, ferré, tůli, lätům (trans across, fero bear), bear across; transfer. Translation.

trans-Igo, Igĕrĕ, ēgī, actŭm (trans through to the end, ago bring), bring to an end; spend. TRANSACT, TRANSACTION.

tran-sĭlio or trans-sĭlio, sĭlīrĕ, sĭlīvī, sĭliī, or sĭluī, sultŭm (trans over, salio leap), leap over. trans-porto, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm (trans across, porto carry), carry across, TRANSPORT. TRANSPORTATION.

trēs, triă [see 108], three.

Trēvĭrī, ōrŭm, m. pl., a people of Northern Gaul.

tribūnus, ī, m. (tribus tribe), TRIBUNE; tribūnī mīlitum, military tribunes, of which officers each legion had six.

trībuo, trībuĕrĕ, trībuī, trībūtǔm, give, grant, bestow. TRIB-UTE, CON-TRIBUTE, CON-TRI-BUTION.

trīcēsĭmŭs, ă, ŭm (triginta thirty), thirtieth.

trīduŭm, ī, n. (tres three, dies day), three days.

trigemini, ōrum, m. pl. (tres three gignor be born), three brothers born at a birth.

trīgintā, num. adj. indecl., thirty. tristĭs, tristĕ, sad, sorrowful.

triumpho, ārē, āvī, ātum (triumphus a triumph), to triumph.

Trōjă, ae, f., Troy, a city in the northwestern part of Asia Minor.

Trojanus, ă, ŭm, Trojan.

tū, pers. pron., thou, you [see 112]. tǔbǎ, ae, f. (akin to tubus, a tube), trumpet.

tŭbicen, inis, m. (tuba trumpet, cano to sound), trumpeter.

Tulingī, ōrŭm, m. pl., a people of Southern Germany, neighbors of the Helvetii.

Tulliŭs, I, m. See Servius.

Tullia, ae, f., daughter of Servius Tullius, and wife of Tarquinius Superbus.

Tullus, ī, m., Tullus Hostilius, the third king of Rome.

tum, adv., then; also.

tumulus, i, m. (tumeo swell), mound.

turris, turris, f., tower. Tur-

tūtor, oris, m. (tueor protect), guardian; tutor.

tūtus, ă, um (tueor protect); safe.

tuŭs, ă, ŭm, poss. pron. (tu thou, you), thy, thine; your, yours.

tyrannus, ī, m., monarch; tyrant.

U.

üběr, üběris, n, udder; teat. ŭbř, adv., when, where.

ulciscor, ulciscī, ultŭs sŭm, take revenge; avenge.

ullŭs, ă, ŭm, any [see 24].

ultěrior, ultěrius (ulter that is beyond), farther [see 85]. ULTERIOR.

ultrā, prep. w. acc., beyond. ULTRA-.

una, adv. (unus one and the same), at the same time; in company, together.

undě, adv., from which place, whence.

undique, adv. (unde, que), from all parts; on all sides.

unus, a, um, one, single; one and the same; pl., alone [see 24].

urbs, urbis, f., city. Sub-urbs. üsus, üs, m. (utor use), use; advantage.

usquě, adv., even; till.

ŭt and ŭtī, conj., that, in order that; as.

ŭtěr, utră, utrům, which of two, which [see 24].

ŭterquĕ, ŭtrăquĕ, ŭtrumquĕ; gen. utrīusquĕ, etc. [declined like ŭtĕr, see 24], each, both.

ūtīlīs, ūtīlĕ (utor use, suffix ilis denoting capability), useful, beneficial, profitable.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsŭs sŭm, USE, make use of; adopt.

utrum, adv. (uter which of two), whether.

uvă, ae, f., a grape; a bunch of grapes.

uxŏr, uxōrĭs, f., wife.

∇ .

- văco, ārĕ, āvī, ātǔm, be unoccupied. VACATE, VACANT, VA-CATION.
- vădum, ī, n. (vado go), ford, shallow.
- vāgītŭs, ūs, m. (vagio cry, squall), crying, squalling.
- văgor, ārī, ātūs sūm (vagus roaming about), roam about, wander about. VAGA-BOND.
- văleo, ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm, PRE-VAILvallum, ī, n. (vallus the line of palisades, stakes, set about an intrenchment), rampart, intrenchment.

- vasto, ārē, āvī, ātǔm (vastas empty, desolate), lay waste, DE-VASTATE.
- vectīgāl, vectīgālis, n. (veho carry), toll paid for carrying goods into a country; tax; revenue.
- věhěmentěr, věhěmentiŭs, věhěmentissimē, adv. (vehčmens violent), violently, severely; furiously; VEHEMENTLY.
- věl, conj., or; věl věl, either or.
- vendo, venděrě, vendřdī, vendřtům (venum sale, do give), sell. Vend.
- věnio, věnīrě, vēnī, ventům, come; arrive at.
- verber, eris, n., blow. Re-ver-BER-ATE.
- verbum, ī, n., word. VERB, VERBAL.
- věreor, věrērī, věritus sum, fear.
- vērō, adv. (verus true), in truth, truly; indeed; but.
- vescor, vescī, fill one's self with;
 live upon; eat.
- Věsontio, ōnĭs, f., the chief town of the Sequăni.
- vespěr, vespěrís and vespěr, ī, m, evening star; evening; ad vespěrům, till evening. Ves-PER, VESPERS.
- Vestă, ae, f., Vesta, the goddess of the hearth, to whom a perpetual fire was kept burning.
- Vestālis, ĕ, of or belonging to Vesta, Vestal.

vestěr, vestră, vestrům, poss. pron., your, yours.

větůs, gen. větěris, old, long standing, ancient. VETERAN, IN-VETER-ATE,

vexillum, ī, n. (velum sail), standard; flag.

vexo, ārē, āvī, ātǔm (veho carry), trouble, annoy, harass. VEX, VEXATION, VEXATIOUS.

viă, ae, f., way, road; path; march.

vīcēsimus, a, um (viginti twenty), twentieth.

victor, oris, m., conqueror.

victoriă, ae, f., VICTORY.

vīcus, ī, m., village

video, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, see.

videor, vidērī, vīsŭs sŭm, pass. and deponent, be seen; seem; seem good or proper.

vigilia, ae, f. (vigilo to watch), watch; de tertia vigilia, in the third watch. See Ln. LV., NOTE 5.

vīgintī, num. adj. indeel., twenty. vinco, vincere, vīcī, victum, conquer.

vinculum, ī, n. (vincio bind), a chain; in vincula conjicere, to throw into prison.

vindico, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, claim. VINDICATE, VINDICATION.

vĭr, vĭri, m., man; hero; husband. See Ln. XXV., Note 1.

virgŏ, ĭnĭs, f. (vireo flourish, bloom), VIRGIN.

virtūs, virtūtīs, f. (vir man, hero), valor, courage; VIRTUE.

vīs, vīs, [acc. vim, dat. and abl. vī; pl., vīrēs, vīriŭm, vīribus, etc.] f., strength, power.

vītă, ae, f. (vivo live), life. VITAL.

vītis, is, f., vine.

vīto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, shun, avoid. vix, adv., with difficulty; scarcely, hardly.

vŏco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, call, summon, invite. VOCATION, VOCA-TIVE.

vŏlo, vellě, vŏluī, be WILLING; wish; desire [see 125].

voluntās, ātis, f. (volo to wish), wish, consent. VOLUNTARY.

vos, pers. pron. pl., you [see 112].

vox, vocis, f., voice. Vocal. vulněro, ārě, āvī, ātům (vulnus

wound), to wound.

vulnŭs, vulněris, a wound. VULNER-ABLE.

vulpes, is, f., fox.



II. English-Latin.

The words given in this Vocabulary are more fully described in the preceding. See that Vocabulary also for the Proper Names.

able, be able, possum. about, w. numerals, ad, circiter. abundance, copia. accuse, accūso. across, trans. adopt, utor. advancing, veniens. advise, moneo. affair, res. after, prep. post; conj. postquam. afterwards, postea. against, in, contra. aid, auxilium; to aid, juvo. all, every, omnis; pl. omnes; all, the whole, totus. ally, socius. almost, paene, prope. alone, solus. also, etiam. although, quum, etsi. ambassador, legātus. among, apud, inter, in. and, et, atque, que; both - and, et - et. animal, animal. announce, nuncio. any, quis, ullus. anything, quid, aliquid (116, a). appoint, creo.

arms, arma. army, exercitus, agmen. around, circum. arrive, pervenio. arrival, adventus. ascertain, cognosco. as soon as, postquam; as soon as possible, quam primum. ask, quaero; ask for, rogo. assemble, convenio. assembly, concilium. assist, adsum. at home, domi. attack, impětus; to attack, oppugno. attempt, conor. at Caesar's feet, Caesari ad pedes. auxiliaries, auxilia. avoid, vito. away, take away, tollo.

B.

bad, malus. baggage, impedimenta. bank, ripa. battle, proelium, pugna. be, sum; be present, adsum; be from or distant, absum. beautiful, pulcher.

because, quod, quia. become, tio; become master of, potior. before, ante, pro; priusquam. beg for, peto. beginning, initium. besiege, oppugno. best, optimus. betake myself, me confero, me recipio. better, melior. between, inter. big, magnus. bold, audax. born, be born, nascor. both, uterque; both - and, et - et. boy, puer. brave, fortis. bravely, fortiter. break up (camp), (castra) moveo.

bridge, pons.
bring, fero; bring upon, infero.

broad, latus.

brother, frater.

building, aedificium.

burn, incendo, cremo; burn up, exūro, combūro.

but if, sin.

buy, emo.

by, a, ab; by no means, minime.

C.

call, summon, voco; call, name, appello; call together, convoco; call to mind, commemoro. camp, castra; pitch a camp, castra pono; break up camp, castra moveo.

can, possum. capture, expugno. carry, carry on, gero; carry on war, bellum gero; bello. cart, carrus. cause, causa. cavalry, equitatus; of cavalry, equester. cavalryman, eques. censure, accūso. character, natūra. chief, princeps. choose, creo. citadel, arx. citizen, civis. city, urbs. cliff, rupes. cold, frigus. collect, comporto, confero, condūco.

duco.

come, venio; come together, convenio; come to, pervenio.

comitium, comitium.

command, be in command of, prae-

sum.
company, in company, una.
complain, queror.
conceal, occulto.
concerning, de.
confidence, fides.
congratulate, gratŭlor.
conquer, vinco.
consent, voluntas.
consider, habeo, duco.

conspiracy, conjuratio.

consul, consul; in the consulship

of Caesar, Caesare consule. continually, continenter. corn, frumentum. could, past tense of possum.
council. concilium.
counsel, consilium.
country, fatherland, patria.
cowardly, ignāvus.
cross, transeo.

D.

danger, periculum. dangerous, periculõsus. daughter, filia. dawn, at the earliest dawn, prima day, dies; at daybreak, prima luce; on the day before, pridie. death, mors. deceive, decipio. decide, statuo. decision, judicium. deep, altus. defend, defendo. delay, moror. deliberate, delibero. demand, postulo, posco. depart, discēdo. departure, profectio. describe, designo. design, consilium. desire, studium, cupidĭtas. desirous, cupidus. destroy, deleo. destruction, pernicies. determine, judico. devastate, vasto. die, morior. differ, differo. difficulty, angustiae; with diffi-

culty, vix.

dig, fodio.
direction, pars.
distance, spatium.
distant, be distant, absum; most
distant, extrēmus.
distinguished, nobilis.
disturb, commoveo.
ditch, fossa.
divulge, enuncio.
do, facio.
draw, duco.
dwell, incolo.

E.

each, to each other, inter se. easily, facile. easy, facilis; very easy, perfacilis. either - or, aut - aut. elect, creo. embassy, legatio. empire, imperium. empty, influo. encamp, castra pono; consido encompass, contineo. encourage, confirmo. end, finis. endeavor, nitor. endure, subeo. enemy, hostis. enervate, effemino. entire, totus, entreat, imploro, oro. equal, par, aequus. establish, confirmo. even, not even, ne - quidem. excel, praecedo, praesto. exhort, hortor. expectation, spes.

extraordinary, incredibilis. eye, oculus.

F.

far, by far, longe; very far, longissĭme. farther, adj., ulterior; adv., longius. father, pater. father-in-law, socer. fatherland, patria. favor, faveo. fear, timor; to fear, timeo, vereor. few, pauci. field, ager. fifteen, quinděcim. fifth, quintus. fight, pugno. find, reperio. fire, ignis; set on fire, incendo. first, primus; in the first part of the night, prima nocte. five, quinque. flight, fuga. flee, fugio. flow, fluo. follow, sequor. fond, cupidus. foot, pes; at the foot of the mountain, sub monte. for, de w. abl., ad w. acc.; for this reason, hoc, eo. foraging, pabulatio. forest, silva. forget, obliviscor. former, pristinus, vetus.

forth, lead forth, educo.

fortify, munio. fortune, fortuna. forward, send forward, praemitto; move forward, promoveo. free, liber; of one's own free will, sua sponte. friend, amīcus. friendly, amīcus. friendship, amicitia. from, from near, a, ab; from out of, e, ex. furiously, vehementer. furnish, facio. furthermost, extrēmus. future, in the future, in reliquum tempus.

G. garrison, praesidium. general, imperator. generosity, liberalĭtas. get possession of, potior. get rid of, depono. qirl, puella. give, do; give orders, impěro; qive satisfaction, satisfacio. glory, gloria. go, eo; go forth, exeo. god, deus. goddess, dea. gone, perf. part. of exigo. good, bonus. government, imperium. grandfather, avus. grant, concēdo. great, magnus; so great, tantus. grievous, gravis. guard, custos.

H.

happen, accido, fio. happy, felix. harass, vexo. hasten, maturo, contendo, accurro. have, habeo. he says, dicit. hear, audio. height, altitudo. help, juvo. hem in, contineo. high, altus. highest, summus. hill, collis. hindrance, impedimentum. his, his own, suus. hither, citerior. hold, habeo, obtineo, teneo; hold a conference, colloquor. home, at home, domi; homeward, domum; from home, domo. hope, spes. horse, equus. hostage, obses. hour, hora.

I.

I, ego.

if, si.

implore, imploro.

import, importo.

in, into, in.

ineite, facio.

house, domus.

hurl, conjicio.

husband, vir.

influence, auctoritas.
influenced, adductus.
inform Caesar, Caesărem certiorem facio.
infuse, injicio.
inquire, quaero.
insult, contumelia.
intervene, intersum.
invite, arcesso.

J.

just, justus.

K.

keep, teneo; keep from, prohibeo.
kill, caedo, interficio.
kindness, beneficium.
king, rex.
know, scio; know, find out, cognosco; not know, nescio.

L.

land, terra.
language, lingua.
large, magnus.
late in the day, multo die.
law, lex, jus.
lay waste, vasto.
lead, duco; lead forth, edūco.
leader, dux.
leave, relinquo.
left, sinister.
legate, legātus.
legion, legio.
letter, epistŏla.

levy on, impōno.
lieutenant, legātus.
like, simĭlis.
line of battle, acies.
little, paulus; a little, paulo.
lofty airs, spirĭtus.
long, for a long time, diu; longer,
diutius.

look at, intueor; look out for, prospicio.

love, amor; to love, amo.

M.

make, facio; make or deliver a speech, orationem habeo; make haste, maturo; make upon, infero. man, vir, homo. manner, in such a manner, ita. many, multi. march, iter; to march, iter facere. marriage, matrimonium; to give in marriage, in matrimonium dare. master, become master of, potior. means, by no means, minime; by means of, see 54. memory, memoria. mile, mille passuum. mind, animus, mens. misfortune, incommodum. missile, telum. month, mensis. more, magis, amplius; be more willing, malo. mother, mater.

mountain, mons.

move, moveo; move forward, promoveo.

much, multus.

multitude, multitūdo.

murder, caedes; to murder, caedo, occīdo.

my, my own, meus.

N.

narrow pass, angustiae. nature, natūra. near, circum, ad. nearest, proximus. nearly, fere. neighbors, finitimi. neither - nor, neque - neque. nine. novem. no, none, nullus. nobility, nobilitas. noble, nobilis. not, non; not - even, ne quidem. none the less, nihilo minus. nothing, nihil. notice, animadverto.

O.

number, numěrus.

obtain, obtineo, consequor occupy, occupo.
oflen, saepe.
old, vetus, natus.
on, upon, in.
on account of, propter.
on all sides, undique.
on the day before, pridie.
one, unus.

one by one, singŭli. one party - the other, altěri altěri. opinion, sententia. opportunity, potestas, facultas. or, aut, vel, an. order, give orders, impěro. other, alius; to each other, from each other, inter se. ought, oportet, debeo. See also LN. LXX. our, our own, noster. out, set out, proficiscor; out of, e. ex. overcome, supěro. own, his own, suus; my own, meus; your own, tuus, vester; their own, suus.

P.

pace, passus. part, pars. party, one party - the other, altěri — altěri. pass the winter, hiĕmo. peace, pax. people, populus. peril, periculum. persist, persevēro. persuade, persuadeo. pitch a camp, castra pono. place, locus; place, put, pono. plan, consilium. please, placeo. pledge, fides. poor, pauper. possession, possessio; get possession of, potior.

power, royal power, sovereign power, regnum. practicable, facilis. practice, exercitatio. praetor, praetor. prepare, compăro. present, be present, adsum. press, press upon, premo. prevail upon, permoveo. prevent, retineo. price, pretium. private, privātus. proceed, procedo. promise, polliceor. protection, praesidium. province, provincia. provisions, commeātus. pursue, persĕquor. put off. confero.

R.

ready, parātus. rear of an army, agmen novissĭmum. reason, causa. recall to mind, reminiscor. recent, recens. refinement, humanitas. reign, regno. rejoice, laetor. relief, subsidium. remain, maneo. remaining, reliquus. remember, memini; memoriā teneo. remembrance, memoria. remove, moveo, removeo.

spondeo.

separate, divido.

report, enuncio. resolve, constituo. rest, the rest, ceteri; rest of, reliquus. restrain, retineo, prohibeo return, revertor, reverto. revenue, vectīgal. reward, praemium. rich, dives. ridge, jugum. right, dexter. ripe, matūrus. river, flümen. road, via, rout, pello. route, iter. royal power, regnum. ruin, pernicies. S. sad, tristis. sake, for the sake of, causa. same, the same, idem. satisfaction, give satisfaction, satisfacio. satisfy, satisfacio. say, dico; he says, dicit. sea, mare. see, video. seem, videor; it seems good, vide-

seize, occupo.

senator, senātor.

send, mitto; send forward, prae-

select, deligo.

sell, vendo.

mitto.

reply, responsum; to reply, re-

set on fire, incendo. set out, proficiscor. severely, graviter, vehementer. ship, navis. short, brevis; shortest way or route, proximum iter. show, probo. shun, vito. side, this side of, citra. sides, on all sides, undique. sight, conspectus. signal, signum. since, quum. single, unus. sister, soror. skilful, perītus. slave, servus. slavery, servitus. small, parvus. so, ita; with adjectives, tam; so great, tantus. soldier, miles. some, some one, aliquis. See 116, a. son, filius; son-in-law, gener. soon, mature. sovereignty, sovereign power, regnum. Spain, Hispania. speak, loquor. speech, oratio; make, deliver a speech, orationem habeo. stand, sto. state, civitas. station, colloco, constituo. stay, maneo. storm, expugno. strengthen, confirmo.

third, tertius.

strive, nitor.
such, tantus.
sufficient, sufficiently, satis; with
sufficient ease, satis commode.
suitable idoneus commodus

suitable, idoneus, commŏdus. summer, aestas.

summon, voco, convŏco.

sunset, occāsus solis.

supply, copia; supplies, res frumentaria, commeātus.

surround, cingo.
survive, supersum.

suspicion, suspicio.

swiftly, celeriter.

T.

take, capture, capio, expugno; take away, tollo; take to one's self, sumo. tarry, moror. teach, doceo. ten, decem. tend, pertineo. territory, ager, fines. than, quam. that, ille. that, in order that, ut; after verbs of fearing, nē. that not, ne; after verbs of fearing, ut. the same, idem. there, in that place, ibi. their, their own, suus. they, them, see LN. LVIII., NOTE 2. thing, res.

think, puto, abitror,

this, hic. those, illi. three days, triduum. three hundred, trecenti. through, per. throw one's self, se projicere. till evening, ad vespěrum. time, tempus; for a long time, diu. to, ad. to-day, hodie. together, come together, convenio. tongue, lingua. top of the mountain, summus mons. towards, ad; towards the north, sub septemtrionibus. tower, turris. town, oppidum. trader, mercator. train up, instituo. tribute, stipendium.

U.

troops, copiae.

twenty, viginti.

two days, biduum.

try, conor.

under, sub.
unoccupied, be unoccupied, vacountil, dum.
unwilling, be unwilling, nolo.
upon, in.
upper, superior.
urge, hortor.

use, utor; make use of, utor. useful, utilis.

V.

valor, virtus. very, valde; very easy, perfacilis; very great, maximus; very is often rendered by ipse: e.g. the very city, urbs ipsa. vicinity, in or into the vicinity of, ad w. name of town in acc. victory, victoria.

W.

wage, gero. wages, merces. wagon, carrus. wait, exspecto. walled town, oppidum. wanting, be wanting, desum. war, bellum. waste, lay waste, vasto. watch, vigilia; in the third watch, de tertia vigilia. way, via. we, nos. See LN. LVII. wealthy, copiosus. weapon, telum. weep, fleo; weeping, flens. what? quid? what sort of a? qui? See Ln. LX. when, quum.

where, ubi.whether, utrum

which, quod. while, dum. who, qui; who? quis? whole, totus. why? quid? wide, latus. willing, be willing, volo. win, concilio. wing of an army, cornu. winter, pass the winter, hiemo. winter-quarters, hiberna. wish, volo. with, cum. withdraw, se recipěre. without, sine. withstand, sustineo. witness, testis. woman, mulier. word, verbum. worthy, dignus. wound, vulnus; to wound, vulněro. write, scribo. wrong, injuria.

Y.

year, annus. yet, tamen. yoke, jugum. you, tu, vos. See Ln. LVII. your, tuus, vester. youth, adolescens.

EDUCATIONAL PUBLICATIONS

S. C. GRIGGS & CO., CHICAGO.

MAILING PRICE.

- BOISE FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK. A new edition. Revised by J. G. PATTENGILL. Adapted to Goodwin's, and to Hadley-Allen's Grammar, and intended as an Introduction to Xenophon's Anabasis. \$1.25.
- BOISE FIRST THREE BOOKS OF HOMER'S ILIAD. With Explanatory Notes, and References to the Grammars of Goodwin, Hadley, and Hadley-Allen. By JAMES R. BOISE, Ph.D., LL.D. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.00.
- BOISE FIRST SIX BOOKS OF HOMER'S ILIAD. With Explanatory Notes, and References to the Grammars of Goodwin, Hadley, and Hadley Allen. Revised Edition. By J. R. Boise, Ph.D., LL.D. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.50.
- BOISE—EXERCISES IN GREEK SYNTAX. Being Exercises in some of the more difficult Principles of Greek Syntax; with References to the Grammars of Crosby, Curtius, Goodwin, Hadley, Hadley-Allen, and Kühner. A Sequel to "Jones's Greek Prose Composition." By J. R. Boise, Ph.D. \$1.25.
- BOISE AND FREEMAN SELECTIONS FROM VARI-OUS GREEK AUTHORS. For the First Year in College. With Explanatory Notes, and References to Goodwin's Greek Grammar and to Hadley's Larger and Smaller Grammars. By J. R. Boise, Ph.D., LL.D., and J. C. FREEMAN, M.A. 12mo. Cloth \$2.00.
- CHITTENDEN ELEMENTS OF ENGLISH COMPOSI-TION. A Preparation for Rhetoric. By Lucy A. CHITTENDEN. 12mo. Cloth. 60 cents.
 - "Progressive, suggestive, and thoroughly practical." Prof. E. E. Smith, Purdue University, Ind.
 - After thorough trial in the class I unhesitatingly commend it." F. S. Hotaling,
 - Prin. High School, Framingham, Mass.

 "As an elementary book, I know no work equal to it."—A. Martin, LL.D., Pres. of De Pauw University, Ind.

 "It ought to be used in every high school."—A. V. Jewett, Supt. of Schools,
 - Abilene, Kan. Between 600 and 700 copies will be required for immediate use." - E. A. Paul,
- Prin. of High School, Washington, D.C.
- CROSS ECLECTIC SHORT-HAND. Writing by Principles instead of Arbitrary Signs, for General Use and Verbatim Reporting. By J. GEO. CROSS, A.M. Complete in one volume. 12mo. Cloth. \$2.00.
- D'OOGE DEMOSTHENES ON THE CROWN. With Extracts from the Oration of Æschines against Ctesiphon, and Explanatory Notes. By M. L. D'Ooge, Ph.D. Professor of Greek, University of Michigan. Cloth. \$1.50.

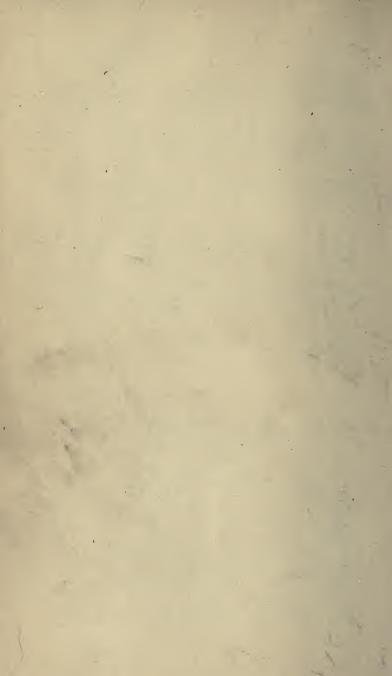
- IN GREEK PROSE JONES — EXERCISES COMPOSI-TION. With References to the Grammars of Hadley and Allen, Goodwin, and Kühner and Taylor, and a full English-Greek vocabulary. By ELISHA JONES, M.A., Professor in the University of Michigan. 12mo. Half leather. \$1.00.
- JONES FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN. Adapted to the Latin Grammars of Allen and Greenough, Andrews and Stoddard, Bartholomew, Bullions and Morris, Chase, Gildersleeve, and Harkness. By Elisha Jones, M.A. 12mo Half leather. \$1.25.
- JONES EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. With References to the Grammars of Allen and Greenough, Andrews and Stoddard, Bartholomew, Bullions and Morris, Gildersleeve, and Harkness. By Elisha Jones. M.A. \$1.00.
- MORRIS MANUAL OF CLASSICAL LITERATURE. Comprising biographical and critical notices of principal Greek and Roman authors, illustrative extracts from their works, etc. By CHARLES MORRIS. 12mo. Cloth. . \$1.50.
- PETERSON NORWEGIAN-DANISH GRAMMAR AND READER. With a Vocabulary designed for American Students of the Norwegian-Danish language. By Rev. C. I. P. PETERSON, Professor of Scandinavian Literature. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.25.
- STEVENS SELECT ORATIONS OF LYSIAS. With Introductions and Explanatory Notes. By W. A. STEVENS, A. M. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.25.
- WELSH ESSENTIALS OF GEOMETRY, By A. H. WELSH, Professor in Ohio State University. 8vo. Cloth. \$1.50.
- WELSH DEVELOPMENT OF ENGLISH LITERATURE AND LANGUAGE. By Prof. A. H. Welsh. University Edition. Complete in 1 vol., unabridged. Crown 8vo. Cloth. \$3.00.
 - "It is a work greatly needed. In plan and execution it seems to me all that could
 - be asked for." John G. Whittier.
 "Welsh' 'English Literature' is unsurpassed for usefulness." J. Ernest Whitney, Instructor in English in Yale College.
- WINCHELL GEOLOGICAL EXCURSIONS; or, The Rudiments of Geology for Young Learners. By ALEXANDER WINCHELL, LL. D., Professor of Geology, etc., University of Michigan. Illustrated. 12mo. Cloth. \$1.25.
- WINCHELL GEOLOGICAL STUDIES: or, Elements of Geology for High Schools, Colleges, Normal and other Schools. By ALEXANDER WINCHELL, LL.D. One vol. 12mo. 540 pages, with 367 fine illustrations. \$3.00.

"It abounds with most excellent points and valuable information, and seems an American book beyond any other I have seen." — Prof. A. P. Kelsey, Hamilton

"I find it full of admirable suggestions in the way of conducting instruction, and of presenting the topics of geology to a class."—H. S. Williams, Prof. of Nat. Sci., Cornell University.

Descriptive Circulars sent on application. Books will be mailed, postage paid, on receipt of price.





Meen of when y teaching, demanding of unay leader of nomeny, calling, chosenny, agarding voice tour accusable of the same thrug time acousting my of the heren of thoming of the libe take in the eastern of the thrust



YB 36249

562547

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

